

**UNDP Project Document**

Government of Cape Verde

Executing Agency: General Directorate for the Environment, Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM)

United Nations Joint Office for Cape Verde

*through the*

United Nations Development Programme

UNDP GEF PIMS no. 4176

**GEF’s Strategic Programme for West Africa - SPWA**

**Sub-Component Biodiversity**

**Consolidation of Cape Verde’s Protected Areas System**

**Brief description**

|  |
| --- |
| The proposed project will strengthen and expand Cape Verde’s national system of Protected Areas (PAs) for both terrestrial and marine units. Cape Verde’s biodiversity is globally significant. It is threatened, however, by a variety of anthropogenic pressures. In coastal and marine ecosystems, localised pollution driven by rapid tourism and real estate developments, exacerbated by unsustainable fishing, lead to a continuous loss of coastal habitat. In terrestrial ecosystems, overgrazing and land degradation aggravated by invasive plant species, are pervasive threats to ecological equilibrium. Ultimately, climate change looms in the horizon as another consequential threat for Cape Verdean ecosystems. The management of Protected Areas is a vital instrument: (1) to safeguard Cape Verde’s unique biodiversity; and (2) to engage communities surrounding PAs in a sustainable use of natural resources supported by environmental conservation. However, several barriers militate against the effectiveness of the nascent national system of PAs. These are linked to: (1) evolving PA management and governance frameworks, i.e. legal, institutional and policy issues; (2) emerging operationalisation of PAs, and (3) persistent capacity gaps in the national management of PAs, despite recent interventions. In this context, this project aims (1) to strengthen and consolidate Cape Verde’s PAs system through the establishment of new terrestrial and marine PA units, and (2) to promote participatory approaches to management and conservation to ensure the overall sustainability of PA systems. In terms of coverage and expansion, the project is expected to add 41,214 ha to the total protected estate as gazetted by law (i.e. a 38% expansion over the baseline) and bring the level of PAs operational from only 6% of the existing estate to 77% of the expanded one. The expansion will be achieved through the consolidation of several MPAs into larger parks extended into the sea for fisheries’ protection purposes. The project will equally support the establishment and strengthening of a PA management autonomous authority and of two island-wide PA offices on Sal and Boa Vista islands. Community mobilization and local capacity building for sustainable resource management within and surrounding PAs will be instituted based on the successful practices and lessons learned from a previous UNDP/GEF PA project. In brief, this project will enhance Cape Verde’s national capacity in the sustainable use and conservation of its unique biodiversity endowment while improving the livelihoods of communities within and surrounding PAs. |

**Table of Contents**

[SECTION I: Elaboration of the Narrative 5](#_Toc259737318)

[PART I: Situation Analysis 5](#_Toc259737319)

[Context and global significance 5](#_Toc259737320)

[Environmental context 5](#_Toc259737321)

[Protected area system: Current status and coverage 8](#_Toc259737322)

[Institutional, Policy and Regulatory context 11](#_Toc259737323)

[Threats, Root causes and Impacts 13](#_Toc259737324)

[Long-term solution and barriers to achieving the solution 16](#_Toc259737325)

[Introduction to Project Sites 20](#_Toc259737326)

[Stakeholder analysis 23](#_Toc259737327)

[Baseline analysis 25](#_Toc259737328)

[PART II: Strategy 27](#_Toc259737329)

[Project Rationale and Policy Conformity 27](#_Toc259737330)

[Fit with the GEF Focal Area Strategy and Strategic Programme 27](#_Toc259737331)

[Rationale and summary of GEF Alternative 28](#_Toc259737332)

[Project Goal, Objective, Outcomes and Outputs 29](#_Toc259737333)

[Project Indicators 38](#_Toc259737334)

[Risks and Assumptions 41](#_Toc259737335)

[Incremental reasoning and expected global, national and local benefits 45](#_Toc259737336)

[Cost-effectiveness 46](#_Toc259737337)

[Project consistency with national priorities/plans: 48](#_Toc259737338)

[Country Ownership: Country Eligibility and Country Drivenness 48](#_Toc259737339)

[Sustainability and Replicability 49](#_Toc259737340)

[PART III: Management Arrangements 51](#_Toc259737341)

[Execution Arrangements 51](#_Toc259737342)

[Implementation Arrangements 52](#_Toc259737343)

[Project Management 53](#_Toc259737344)

[Oversight 53](#_Toc259737345)

[Project Management at the central level 54](#_Toc259737346)

[Project Management at site level 55](#_Toc259737347)

[PART IV: Monitoring and Evaluation Plan and Budget 56](#_Toc259737348)

[Monitoring and reporting 56](#_Toc259737349)

[Inception Phase 56](#_Toc259737350)

[Monitoring responsibilities and events 57](#_Toc259737351)

[Project Reporting 58](#_Toc259737352)

[Independent Evaluations, Audits and financial reporting 60](#_Toc259737353)

[Audit Clause 61](#_Toc259737354)

[PART V: Legal Context 63](#_Toc259737355)

[SECTION II: STRATEGIC RESULTS FRAMEWORK (SRF) AND GEF INCREMENT 64](#_Toc259737356)

[PART I: Strategic Results Framework, SRF (formerly GEF Logical Framework) Analysis 64](#_Toc259737357)

[Indicator framework as part of the SRF 64](#_Toc259737358)

[List of Outputs per Outcome as part of the SRF 67](#_Toc259737359)

[PART II: Incremental Cost Analysis 69](#_Toc259737360)

[SECTION III: Total Budget and Workplan 71](#_Toc259737361)

[PART I: Total Budget and Workplan 71](#_Toc259737362)

[SECTION IV: ADDITIONAL INFORMATION 75](#_Toc259737363)

[PART I: Co-financing Letters 75](#_Toc259737364)

[Overview of Co-financing Letters 75](#_Toc259737365)

[PART II: Organigram of Project 76](#_Toc259737366)

[PART III: Terms of References for key project staff 76](#_Toc259737367)

[National Project Coordinator 76](#_Toc259737368)

[Chief Technical Adviser 78](#_Toc259737369)

[Overview of Inputs from Technical Assistance Consultants 79](#_Toc259737370)

[PART IV: Stakeholder Involvement Plan 84](#_Toc259737371)

[Project Annexes 87](#_Toc259737372)

[Annex 1. Overview of PAs and MPAs and Key Features of Selected Areas 88](#_Toc259737373)

[Annex 2. Geographical Location of Selected PAs and MPAs (included as a separate file) 90](#_Toc259737374)

[Annex 3. Results of the UNDP Capacity Development Scorecard for PA Management 91](#_Toc259737375)

[Annex 4. Financial Analysis of Protected Areas 94](#_Toc259737376)

[Annex 5. Ecotourism and Livelihoods Alternative Analysis for selected PAs 96](#_Toc259737377)

[Annex 6. GEF4 Complete Tracking Tools 107](#_Toc259737378)

[Section One: Project General Information 108](#_Toc259737379)

[Name of reviewers completing tracking tool and completion dates 108](#_Toc259737380)

[Section Two: Management Effectiveness Tracking Tool for Protected Areas: 111](#_Toc259737381)

[Section Three: UNDP’s Financial Sustainability Scorecard for National Systems of Protected Areas 141](#_Toc259737382)

[Financial Scorecard - Part I – Overall Financial Status of the Protected Areas System 141](#_Toc259737383)

[Financial Scorecard – Part II – Assessing Elements of the Financing System 145](#_Toc259737384)

[Financial Scorecard – Part III – Scoring and Measuring Progress 152](#_Toc259737385)

[Annex 7. Detailed Stakeholder Analysis 153](#_Toc259737386)

[Annex 8. Overview of PPG Studies 161](#_Toc259737387)

[Annex 9. Calculation Basis for the Incremental Cost Analysis 163](#_Toc259737388)

Overview of Tables, Figures and Boxes

[Table 1. Structure of Cape Verde's PA / MPA Network per Biome and Category 9](#_Toc259737258)

[Table 2. Overview of Project Intervention Sites 22](#_Toc259737259)

[Table 3. Key stakeholders and roles and responsibilities 23](#_Toc259737260)

[Table 4. Overview of PA/MPA Operationalisation based on the Expanded System 28](#_Toc259737261)

[Table 5. Overview of Project Indicators 38](#_Toc259737262)

[Table 6. Elaboration of Risks 42](#_Toc259737263)

[Table 7. Project Risks Assessment and Mitigation Measures 43](#_Toc259737264)

[Table 8. M&E Activities, Responsibilities, Budget and Time Frame 61](#_Toc259737265)

[Table 9. Incremental Cost Matrix 69](#_Toc259737266)

[Table 10. Project’s co-financing letters 75](#_Toc259737267)

[Table 11. Overview of Inputs from Technical Assistance Consultants 79](#_Toc259737268)

[Table 12. Overview of Project Teams by Financier 84](#_Toc259737269)

[Table 13. Coordination and Collaboration between the Project and Related Initiatives 85](#_Toc259737270)

[Table 14. Overview of legally defined PAs and MPAs of Cape Verde 88](#_Toc259737271)

[Table 15. Key Features and Land Uses within and around the Project’s Terrestrial Sites 89](#_Toc259737272)

[Table 16. Summary Results of the UNDP Capacity Development Scorecard for PA Management 91](#_Toc259737273)

[Table 17. Numeric Scores for the UNDP Capacity Development Scorecard for PA Management 91](#_Toc259737274)

[Figure 1. Cape Verde’s geographical location and islands 5](#_Toc259737256)

[Figure 2. Gradients in the Levels of Participation in PA Management 36](#_Toc259737257)

Box 1. Results from the Phase I UNDP/GEF Terrestrial Protected Area Project 10

Box 2. Environmental Issues Linked to Mass Tourism in Cape Verde 14

Box 3. Defining Thresholds for Resource and Land Use 40

Box 4. Risk Assessment Guiding Matrix 42

**Acronyms**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| ANMCV | National Association of Municipalities in Cape Verde |
| ATMAR | Atelier Mar-Nacional NGO |
| CM | Municipal Chamber |
| CNA | National Environment Council |
| CTA | Chief Technical Advisor |
| CVI | Cape Verde Investment Society |
| DGA | General Directorate for Environment |
| DGASP | General Directorate for Agriculture, Livestock and Fishery |
| DGCI | General Directorate for International Aid |
| DGDT | General Directorate for Tourism Development |
| DGP | General Directorate for Fisheries |
| DME | General Directorate for Education |
| EEZ | Exclusive Economic Zone |
| EU | European Union |
| FNP | Fogo Natural Park |
| GEF | Global Environment Facility |
| GCV | Government of Cape Verde |
| INDP | National Institute for Fishery Development |
| INIDA | National Institute for Agriculture Development and Research |
| IUCN | International Union for the Conservation of Nature |
| MADRRM | Minister for Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources |
| MPA | Marine Protected Area |
| NGOs | Non Governmental Organizations |
| OMCV | Cape Verde Women’s Organization |
| PA | Protected area |
| PAAA | Protected Areas Autonomous Agency |
| PAM | Municipal Environment Plans |
| PANA | National Action Plan for Environment |
| PN | Natural Park |
| PPG | Project Preparatory Phase |
| UNDP | United Nations Development Programme |
| UNICV | Cape Verde University |
| UNJO | United Nations Joint Office |
| UNOTUR | National Union for Tourism Operators |
| WWF | World Wildlife Fund |

# SECTION I: Elaboration of the Narrative

## PART I: Situation Analysis

### Context and global significance

#### Environmental context

1. Cape Verde is an archipelago nation composed of ten islands and eight islets of volcanic origin and is located approximately 500 km west of the West African coast, opposite Senegal (). It is a stable democracy with significantly higher literacy and education levels than any other country in West Africa. Cape Verde ranks third highest on the Human Development Index among Sub-Saharan African countries (0.736).[[1]](#footnote-2) Its economy is service-oriented, with commerce, transport, tourism and public services accounting for more than 70% of its GDP.

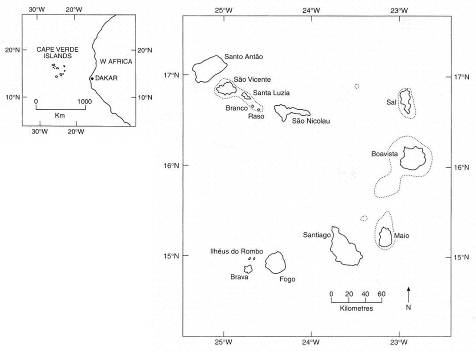
****

Figure 1. Cape Verde’s geographical location and islands

1. The country’s Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) is made up of approximately 63,000 sq km of ocean area and 4,033 sq km of land. The islands, which rise from the deep abyssal plain beyond the African continental shelf, are divided into two groups according to how the wind blows: Windward and Leeward. The Windward Islands are Santo Antão, São Vicente, Santa Luzia, São Nicolau, Sal and Boavista; the Leeward group includes Maio, Santiago, Fogo and Brava. The climate is dry and tropical, with an average temperature of 24°C and very low levels of rainfall – the mean annual precipitation is 225 mm with significant temporal and spatial variations. Morphology and geology features also vary greatly among the islands. The relief is very steep on the islands that are mountainous, culminating in high elevations (e.g. 2,829 m on Fogo Island and 1,979 m on Santo Antão Island). These factors play an important role in condensation and precipitation as well as in biodiversity—as discussed below.
2. The volcanic origin of the archipelago has resulted in physical isolation from the African continent for at least 35 million years. Isolation and a dry climate have led to the evolution of unique flora and fauna, as local species gradually adapted to the varied climatic and geological conditions, resulting in high levels of endemism across the islands. The continental platform supports significant amounts of marine biomass and is mostly concentrated around the Boavista and Maio islands; 100,000 tons of fish live in the archipelago. There are also globally important coralline formations on several of the islands. As a result of its unique biogeography, Cape Verde displays an outstanding biological diversity, the protection of which is the object of this project.
3. Cape Verde’s profuse biodiversity has recently led to its reconsideration as a global hotspot for terrestrial and marine biodiversity and, in particular, as a centre for endemism.[[2]](#footnote-3) The country’s unique terrestrial habitats form part of the realm of the Macaronesian Forests, which is one of WWF’s Global 200 Ecoregions. Marine biodiversity and endemism among certain marine organisms is also high. A recent global study identified Cape Verde as one of the world’s top ten coral reef biodiversity hotspots.[[3]](#footnote-4) In addition, the whole archipelago of the Cape Verde Islands is considered to be an Important Bird Area (IBA).[[4]](#footnote-5) Driven by anthropogenic factors, Cape Verde’s biodiversity is currently under threat. Because of the country’s archipelagic nature and high level of endemism, the risk of extinction to individual species is an ever present reality. These risks need to be addressed, not just for the sake of the global importance of Cape Verdean biodiversity, but also for the benefit of Cape Verdeans, who depend on the sustainable use of the country’s biological resources for their livelihoods.
4. Native animal biodiversity is characterized by significant avian, reptile, and arthropod diversity, and remains at great risk in the country. The country has 37 species of gastropods, 15 of which are endemic, of which 10 are listed as threatened. Arachnid species number 111, 46 of which are endemic, and 36 of these are listed as threatened. Of the 470 species of insects (coleopterans) found on the islands, 155 are endemic, and 120 of these are listed as threatened. Over 59% of the land molluscs are threatened, as are 28% of the land reptiles. The condition and future status of avian species in Cape Verde is particularly disturbing. Overall, 47% of the bird species on Cape Verde are threatened, including 17 of the 36 species that reproduce on the islands. Several endemic birds are listed as endangered, including *Pandion haliaetus*, *Halcyon leucocephala* and *Calonectris edwardsii. Alauda razae*, which lives only in Cape Verde, has been reduced to a population of 250. The first census of the Red Kite (*Milvus milvus fasciicauda)* and the Black Kite (*Milvus m. migrans)* revealed their populations on the entire archipelago to be fewer than 10 of each species (Hille, 1998). Cape Verde is an important stop for migrating (130 species) and nesting birds (40 species), with four such species listed as threatened (*Fregata magnificens*, *Sula leucogaster*, *Calonectrix edwardsii* and *Phaethon aethereus mesonauta*). Cape Verde has possessed 28 species of reptile in its history, 25 of which are endemic and 18 of which are still in existence, with 25% of those in existence being threatened. There are 5 species of turtle in the Cape Verde marine ecosystems that generally have been exploited unsustainably.
5. Regarding flora, there are 238 vascular plant taxa in the Cape Verde archipelago. One genus, Tomabenea (Apiaceae) is endemic, and there are 82 other endemic species, all of which are angiosperms. The vast majority of these (74 species) are dicots, with the largest families being Asteraceae (16) and Brassicaceae (12). Most of the endemic species found in Cape Verde (67) are woody perennials, mainly shrubs or sub-shrubs; there are only two native species of trees, *Phoenix atlantidis* and *Sideroxylon marginata*. The remaining fifteen species are herbaceous, eight of them annuals and seven perennials. Of the 110 species of bryophytes in Cape Verde, 40 are threatened; of the 15 endemic species, 6 are threatened. There are 240 species of angiosperms on the islands, 84 of which are endemic and 45 of these are threatened. Over 65% of the pteridophytes and 29% of the lichens are threatened.
6. Cape Verde’s endemic terrestrial biodiversity is well distributed throughout the islands. Island size, diversity of climate and geographic relief and, thus, ecological niches are the most important determining factors. Santo Antão is the richest island in terms of endemism with 46 species (of which 11 species are unique to the island), followed by São Nicolau with 44 (with 7 species exclusive to the island), Santiago with 36, Fogo with 35, São Vicente with 34, Brava with 24, Boavista with 14, Sal with 13, Santa Luzia with 12 and Maio with 10 species A variety of medicinal plants, both exotic and native, are found throughout the islands. These plants are widely used by rural populations, e.g. the endemic plant *Micromeria forbesii, which* is known and used by rural populations in many areas as an herbal tea.
7. Cape Verde’s marine biodiversity is abundant. Cape Verde harbours 10% of the global diversity of the marine gastropod genus Conus. Marine biodiversity is concentrated on the large marine platform shared by three of Cape Verde’s islands – Boavista, Maio and Sal. Recent surveys show that Cape Verde harbours 639 species of fish, all of which are present in high numbers. While overall the fish populations are high, the percentage of endemic fish species in the specific area of the Cape Verde islands is considered to be low (approximately 13%); this percentage is, however, much higher among less mobile organisms (like gastropods, as mentioned before). There are 5 species of turtles in the Cape Verde’s waters: *Dermocels coriacea*, *Chelonia mydas*, *Eretmochelys imbricata*, *Caretta caretta* and *Lepidochels olivacea*. It is estimated that approximately 3,000 loggerhead turtles (*Caretta caretta*) nest in Boa Vista and Sal annually, making these areas the second most important nesting sites in the entire Atlantic Ocean. Marine turtles have been generally exploited in an unsustainable fashion for decades. Their eggs and meat are highly appreciated food by humans, and their shell is used to make jewellery items. Of the four known families of crawfish, two are found in the Cape Verde archipelago: the *Palinuridae* (pink, green and brown lobster) and the *Scyllaride* (rock lobster). The *Palinuris charlestoni* is an endemic species. Several marine species in Cape Verde are exploited, often to the limit of sustainability. Cape Verde’s coastal and marine ecosystems also support marine mammals (at least 17 species of whales and dolphins), coral reefs, algae and sponges. Its coral diversity is considered to be one of the highest in the world. Research indicates, however, that detailed studies on marine resources are necessary in order to establish a temporal and spatial distribution of key marine species, many of which are migratory.

#### Protected area system: Current status and coverage

1. Protected areas (PAs) are one critical instrument used to conserve terrestrial and marine biodiversity. They also promote the sustainable management of natural resources, in particular through the use of nascent participatory approaches to conservation. Although the management capability of PAs is still incipient, existing experiences indicate the benefits of PAs, not just in terms of the conservation of indigenous (and largely endemic) biodiversity, but also in terms of the benefits derived by local populations from sustainable livelihoods.
2. In the past few years, the country has made important strides in the creation of a PA system, where none has existed previously. The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (1999) defined priority habitats for conservation in Cape Verde – habitats that are representative of the country’s biodiversity endowment. This priority-setting exercise served as the basis for the legal establishment of the national PA network in 2003, counting on 47 sites consisting of both terrestrial (PAs) and coastal/marine protected areas (MPAs). Since then, the government has been leading efforts towards operationalising these sites. (For the full list of Cape Verde’s PAs and MPAs, refer to .)
3. The total protected area designated by law includes: *(i)* 72,156 hectares of landscape (including exclusively terrestrial landscapes and coastal areas, representing 15% of the country’s land surface); and *(ii)* 13,460 hectares of seascape. Six categories are foreseen in Cape Verde’s PA system, according to the law that governs it: *(a)* Natural Reserve (15 sites); *(b)* National Park (no sites yet gazetted) *(iii)* Natural Park (10 sites) *(c)* Natural Monument (6 sites); *(d)* Protected Landscape (10 sites); and *(f)* Area of Scientific Interest (no sites yet gazetted). The first category can be sub-divided into three sub-categories: (1) Integrated Natural Reserve (6 sites); (2) Partial Natural Reserve; and (3) Temporal Natural Reserve (of which the two latter have no sites yet gazetted). Natural Parks and Natural Reserves are the predominant categories, covering at least 75% of the area of the overall PA network (see for an overview).
4. The law does not stipulate correspondence between the national and the IUCN PA categories, and this is a gap in the legislation. Presently, Cape Verde has three sites designated as Wetlands of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention: Curral Velho, Lagoa de Pedra Badejo and Lagoa de Rabil. Of these, only the first one has a corresponding national category – the Protected Landscape of Curral Velho on Boavista Island. The potential exists for establishing other Ramsar sites, but this would require a more active engagement in the implementation of the Convention. Apart from the Ramsar sites, no other international PA category is recognised in Cape Verde. Since 2005, there have been several efforts to start a Man and Biosphere Reserve Programme in Cape Verde, but until now these efforts have been fruitless.

Table 1. Structure of Cape Verde's PA / MPA Network per Biome and Category

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **National PA categories within each biome** | **Number of sites** | **Landscape area (ha)** | **Seascape area (ha)** | **% of the PA/MPA network** | **Remarks** |
| ***Exclusively terrestrial sites (terr. PAs)*** | ***20*** | ***30,048*** |  | ***42%*** | The largest sites are on the Fogo, Santo Antão and Boavista islands. Two terrestrial parks on the São Nicolau and Santiago islands were made operational through a previous UNDP/GEF biodiversity project. Sites are well distributed among Cape Verde’s islands and are representative of the country’s terrestrial ecosystems. |
| Protected Landscapes | 5 | 7,080 | - | 10% |
| Natural Reserves | 2 | 1,118 | - | 2% |
| Natural Parks | 8 | 20,357 | - | 28% |
| Natural Monuments | 5 | 1,494 | - | 2% |
| ***Coastal and marine sites (MPAs)*** | ***27*** | ***28,649*** | ***13,460*** | ***58%*** | The concept of a marine protected area (MPA) is fairly new in Cape Verde, so experience in MPA management is incipient. All of the sites created by law still need to be made operational on the ground. Three islands harbour the large majority of the country’s MPAs: Boavista, Sal and Maio. Sites also include the inhabited island of Santa Luzia and the islets of Branco, Raso and Rombo. |
| Protected Landscapes | 5 | 2,983 | 0 | 4% |
| Natural Reserves | 13 | 10,573 | 5,935 | 23% |
| Natural Parks | 2 | 10,044 | 7,524 | 24% |
| Natural Monuments | 1 | 90 | 0 | 0% |
| Integrated Natural Reserves | 6 | 4,959 | 0 | 7% |
| ***Total PAs and MPAs*** | ***47*** | ***58,696*** | ***13,460*** | ***100%*** | The total hectarage of the PA/MPA network is 72,156 ha of land and seascapes. |

1. Cape Verde’s national PA network can be divided into: (1) a terrestrial sub-set and (2) a coastal/marine one, with respect to the biome they seek to provide protection to. The terrestrial sub-set comprises 20 sites that were legally established in 2003, totalling 30,048 hectares, which corresponds to 7.5% of the country’s land surface. Eight of Cape Verde’s islands have terrestrial PAs, the largest one being on Fogo (Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park with 8,469 hectares); this particular PA includes the crater of the island’s volcano, which is still active.[[5]](#footnote-6) Of all the terrestrial PAs, only two sites were effectively made operational so far.[[6]](#footnote-7) These are the Natural Parks of Serra Malagueta on Santiago Island (1,200 hectares) and of Monte Gordo on São Nicolau Island (2,500 hectares). The operationalisation of these sites was achieved through the support of a UNDP/GEF Biodiversity project.[[7]](#footnote-8) Together, the Natural Parks of Serra Malagueta and Monte Gordo represent no more than 12% of the total area of the terrestrial sub-set of PAs and only 6% of the total area of land and seascape that form part of Cape Verde’s PA System; in total, a fraction of the overall PA estate. Most of the terrestrial PAs are located in high altitude areas and play an important role in moist condensation, precipitation and in the protection of watersheds. They contain relict native vegetation, including an important assemblage of endemic plants. Sites also support important avian species and herptofauna. Some of these areas, however, have been managed for decades as ‘forestry perimeters’ and have been invaded, to varying degrees, by exotic species of plants, some of which are classified as invasive alien species (IAS). Many terrestrial sites are difficult to access (only through rough trails) and are generally well protected, even without management intervention, while others suffer significant pressure from surrounding communities.
2. As for the coastal and marine sub-set of the PA network (hereby generically defined as MPAs), 27 sites were gazetted in 2003, comprising 42,109 hectares of coastal land and seascapes (respectively 13,460 and 27,199 hectares). Nine (09) of these sites, comprising more than half of the total area of the MPAs, are located on Boavista Island. The others are located on the Maio and Sal islands.[[8]](#footnote-9) The uninhabited island of Santa Luzia is an MPA in its entirety with 3,500 hectares. The same applies to a few islets (Rombo, Branco and Raso). One MPA is exclusively marine (the Marine Natural Reserve of Baía da Murdeira with 2,067 hectares of seascape).[[9]](#footnote-10) Except for Santa Luzia, which counts on a management plan and access restrictions enforced by the Coast Guard, no other MPA in Cape Verde has so far been effectively operationalised. Experience in the management of MPAs is even more incipient than with terrestrial sites. Coastal land-use is rather intense in most of the Cape Verde islands and therefore the establishment of MPAs will likely not be free from controversy. Furthermore, because the local fishing sector has not yet faced a serious scarcity crisis, the benefit of MPAs as nursing areas for fish and marine mammals has not yet been widely realised, except among members of the scientific community.

Box . Results from the Phase I UNDP/GEF Terrestrial Protected Area Project

Planned as a phased programme, the GEF approved the first of two phases of the project “*Integrated participatory ecosystem management in and around protected areas*”, which has been under implementation since 2003 and is scheduled to reach the end of Phase I in mid-2009. In the current context, there will not be a “Phase II project” concentrating on terrestrial areas only. Instead, this project proposal (‘Consolidation of PAs’) will focus on the same terrestrial sites that would have been targeted by a phase II intervention, but will also incorporate marine sites, in a broader effort to consolidate Cape Verde’s protected area system. The following key results have been achieved through the implementation of the Phase I project: *(1)* establishment of the two first PAs in the country with management planning & structures, site committees, trained staff and equipment; *(2)* establishment of a basic legal framework for PAs and legally establishing the current PA/MPA estate; *(3)* piloting of participatory approaches to conservation involving adjacent communities and other stakeholders by promoting alternative livelihoods and awareness-raising at all levels; *(4)* establishment of the framework for an enhanced fight against IAS in and around terr. PAs; and *(5)* completion of feasibility studies for the creation of a dedicated institution for PA management.

The project had its terminal evaluation in August 2009. It was rated ‘Satisfacfory’ with *“[r]emarkable achievements and progress but need for more strategic planning, and for more sustainability-inducing focus*” In summary, the evaluation concluded the following:

* *“It is evident that the project had a number of impressive results. Most importantly, the project has created the first two protected areas in Cape Verde, established the conditions for their function, and initiated activities for enabling integrated co-management of natural resources in and around them. Comprehensive baseline information was compiled and management plans were elaborated and adopted for the two parks. Moreover, the project has successfully introduced the concepts of protected areas and sustainable management of natural resources, as key and feasible instruments for conservation of nationally and globally important biodiversity in Cape Verde, with overwhelming support of decision makers, key stakeholders, and the general public. The project has created several valuable assets for biodiversity conservation in Cape Verde. These include mainly: the support achieved at all levels for the protected areas concept; the two established pilot protected areas; the involved communities’ support to their integration in sustainable management practices; and maybe most important – a team of committed, capacitated and highly motivated national technical staff, capable and willing to take the leadership in developing a network of protected areas in the country.*
* *“The main weakness of the project is embedded in its weak exit strategy, combined with the lack of sufficient focus on up-streaming and strategically planned activities, and on sustainability-inducing activities, through the project’s implementation. It should be noted though that the project was designed as Phase I to be followed by Phase II, and therefore an exit strategy was not required at the design stage. However, it is essential to pay attention and provide an immediate response to the serious risks resulting from the later replacement of the Phase II with another follow up project, and especially from the unplanned time gap between the two projects. If continuity and sustainability of the project achievements will not be maintained and strengthened through dedicated follow-up project/s and activities, there is a high risk for their rapid degradation, resulting with adverse impacts, and a long-term loss of national confidence in the process.*
* *“Almost all of the stakeholders interviewed for this evaluation, were of the opinion that the project failed to secure the long-term continuity and sustainability of its results and achievements. Sustainability of most of the achievements listed above will therefore depend on follow-up activities. If such measures will be taken, through specific dedicated activities, as well as integrated in the follow-up project design and activities, the important impacts of the [Cape Verde’s Protected Area Project] Phase I results can be maintained and their continuity can be secured.”*

***For more information, refer to the project’s website:*** [www.areasprotegidas.cv](http://www.areasprotegidas.cv)

#### Institutional, Policy and Regulatory context

1. The General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), under the Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM), has the mandate and the primary responsibility for the management of all PAs in Cape Verde, including policy development and partnerships. As it is discussed hereunder, resources and capacities are in short supply so that these organizations can discharge their obligations adequately. For example, at the central level, DGA counts on a small core of technical officers who are in charge of coordinating PA planning, management and monitoring (including ecological monitoring), as well as fund-raising and the development of partnerships. At the decentralised level, MADRRM has representations on all of the main islands (called ‘Delegations’) with limited resources and operational capacities. The Ministry has a broad mandate including policy development, and the promotion and regulation of several sectors, including agriculture, livestock, environment, water resources and fisheries. Island Delegations count on one or more technical officers dedicated exclusively to the ‘environment’, who are equally responsible for PA management at the local level.[[10]](#footnote-11) Larger municipalities may count on an environment officer within their Municipal Councils. Several PA sites count on ranger presence.[[11]](#footnote-12) With the exception of the terrestrial sites that have been operationalised through the assistance of a previous UNDP/GEF PA project (mentioned in paragraph and further referred to as the ‘Phase I Project’ – see ), none of the rangers have received formal training. The two previously mentioned sites (Serra Malagueta and Monte Gordo Natural Parks) count on a small cadre of technical officers. At the peak of project implementation, the technical cadre dedicated to PA management reached approximately 50 people, including those based in Praia (the capital), in Assomada, in the rural area of Santiago Island (close to where Serra Malagueta is located) and on São Nicolau Island. Among them were both national and international collaborators, many of whom were under government contracts.
2. The General Directorate of Agriculture, Livestock and Fisheries (DGASP) collaborates with the DGA in the management of some terrestrial PAs by directly managing reforestation and ecosystem rehabilitation activities. Some of Cape Verde’s leading research institutions, including the National Institute for Agriculture Development and Research (INIDA) and the National Institute for Fishery Development (INDP) also collaborate with the DGA in the management of PAs through technical studies. The Cape Verde Office of the international NGO World Wildlife Fund (WWF) has also been engaged in MPA establishment, through the regional multi-donor and multi-stakeholder Regional Coastal and Marine Conservation Programme for West Africa (PRCM). Although several donor agencies have begun supporting PA management, capacity constraints are pervasive among national organizations and institutions. This is a central challenge that needs to be tackled during the implementation of the present project.
3. Through the Phase I Project, which focused exclusively on terrestrial sites (see for more information), the legal and policy agenda has progressed with respect to the entire PA System and the institutional capacity for terrestrial PA management. Specifically: (1) the core technical staff of Phase I UNDP/GEF project are ready to embrace the challenge of consolidating Cape Verde’s PA System; (2) the basic legal framework that gazetted the existing PA estate is now in place; and (3) PA categories are defined by law and PA management is irrevocably inserted into the broader environment policy frameworks, including the Second National Action Plan for the Environment (PANA II 2004-2014), the umbrella programme for the environment sector.[[12]](#footnote-13)
4. The Environment Framework Law (*Lei-Quadro do Ambiente*, No. 86/IV/93 of June 26, 1993) outlines policy orientations and is derived from the fundamental right to a healthy environment and each citizen’s duty to preserve it, as described in Cape Verde’s Constitution.[[13]](#footnote-14) The Environment Framework Law, article 29, stipulates the establishment of a PA network and targets “*land areas, inland and maritime waters and other discrete natural features that should be subject to gazetting, preservation and conservation measures, due to their aesthetic value, rarity, scientific, cultural and social relevance or their contribution to the biological balance and ecological stability of landscapes*”. Also, the protection of natural areas, landscapes, sites, monuments and protected species is described in Decree No. 14/97 (of July 1, 1997), where criteria for the selection of PAs was first defined by law.
5. In 2003, the legal regime that governs the establishment of the national PA System became more precisely defined with the enactment of Decree-Law No. 3/2003 (February 24, 2003). Areas were then gazetted due to their significance for “*biodiversity, natural resources, ecological functions, cultural values, and tourism interest*”. The six afore-mentioned categories of PAs were also defined by Decree-Law 3/2003.[[14]](#footnote-15) More specific guidance was to be provided by the actual management plans for individual sites. The list of the 47 sites that compose Cape Verde’s original PA estate, their indicative size and location were an annex to the Law. (Refer to for the list)
6. Moreover, article 2 of Decree-Law No. 3/2003 stipulates that PAs and natural resource management is the responsibility of the MADRRM, DGA and DGASP. These national authorities are responsible for: (1) preventing violations, modifications and contamination of the natural environment; (2) promoting sustainable management and exploitation of natural resources; (3) ensuring biodiversity conservation; (4) restoring natural habitats; (5) protecting the historical and archaeological elements of sites; and (6) promoting participatory natural resource management in PAs. Additionally, article 22 of Decree-Law 3/2003 creates opportunities for governments to establish a PA Advisory Council for each island or for each PA, to facilitate PA management through a participatory approach with all stakeholders. The Council would serve as a forum for debate and conflict resolution; but there are no such councils currently functioning in Cape Verde. Another legal tool described in Decree-Law 3/2003 concerns the potential to establish PA management agreements; none have been signed so far. As for the economic resources necessary for managing PAs, Decree-Law 3/2003 also allows the Government to create an Environment-Fund, which effectively exists, but is currently low on resources. Revenues may also be obtained by charging fees or rent for third party management through a concession process.
7. With respect to oversight authority, Decree-Law 3/2003 defines two scenarios for the management of Cape Verde’s PA System. The first scenario foresees direct management by the governmental body responsible for the environment sector (currently, DGA), under policy guidance from the National Council for the Environment. The second scenario – towards which Cape Verde is heading now – stipulates the creation of an autonomous authority for the direct management of the PA System. Such an authority would have budgetary autonomy, allowing it to directly seek, obtain and manage funds from many different sources, and would be institutionally linked to the DGA with respect to broader policy decisions.
8. Finally, the current legal context is a critical constraint in the management and operation of PAs and MPAs. This is underscored by the following fact: although all of the 47 sites that compose Cape Verde’s PA estate have been gazetted by Decree-Law 3/2003, specific legislation still needs to be passed to define the specific boundaries of the individual PAs and to resolve any land or usage conflicts that may exist. Currently, only three PAs count on such a regulatory framework.

### Threats, Root causes and Impacts

1. As established in the previous chapter, Cape Verde’s biodiversity status in terms of abundance, distribution, and diversity has been under growing pressure from a variety of anthropogenic and natural threats. The fauna and flora status was first comprehensively recorded in the 1996 Cape Verde Red List. Cape Verde’s increasing desertification has resulted in several documented single-island extinctions of endemic taxa, in particular on the eastern islands (e.g. the xerophytes *Diplotaxis glauca* and *Pulicaria diffusa* and the mesophytes *Polycarpaea gayi*, *Sideroxylon* *marginata*, and *Verbascum capitis-viridis*). In addition, anthropogenic action also contributed to the disappearance of the Cape Verde giant lizard, *Macroscincus coctei.*
2. Island biodiversity is the legacy of a unique evolutionary history and is therefore particularly fragile and vulnerable. This fragility and vulnerability are accentuated by the country’s dry climate and pre-existing climatic variability. The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment concluded that the main drivers of island biodiversity loss would either continue or increase rapidly. This process would obviously be exacerbated by the gradual impacts of climate change, coupled with habitat change, over-exploitation and, particularly, invasive species. Hereunder the direct threats to Cape Verde’s biodiversity, the pressure that these threats represent on its biodiversity status and their specific (root) causes are summarized:
   * + 1. Habitat destruction and ecosystem degradation

Soil erosion, in both terrestrial and coastal environments, is responsible for the destruction of entire habitats in Cape Verde, in particular vulnerable dry land vegetative zones and dunes. In coastal areas, the expansion of tourism and real estate is encroaching on wild areas and contributing to beach and dune erosion (see ). Sand is also intensively collected on certain sites for construction purposes. In spite of tight regulations on sand dredging, enforcement is ineffective.[[15]](#footnote-16) Human occupation on beach areas disturbs the reproduction of marine turtles (e.g. in 2007 quad biking on beaches was said to have destroyed 70% of the turtle nests on Sal Island) and increases pollution levels in bay areas, as does increased tourism and real estate expansion. Often, this expansion is endorsed by local development plans without due diligence to potential negative environmental impacts. As for terrestrial landscapes, main threats include land clearing for agriculture – the cultivated area expands every year –, grazing by domestic animals (goats being particularly destructive) and high consumption of water, either for irrigation (often managed in a wasteful manner) or for *grogue*-making[[16]](#footnote-17). The careless use of agro-chemicals and poor human waste disposal pollutes the soil and negatively impacts native vegetation. These threats are also present in areas adjacent to PAs and can be generally attributed to poor land management practices and limited knowledge of how to treat dangerous waste. Exotic tree plantations (including ones located in areas that are today PAs), though beneficial for erosion control, have also transformed entire native habitats, thereby restricting most native species’ survival. Until recently, the impact of such forestry practices on native vegetation was not known.

* + - 1. Invasive Alien Species (IAS)

IAS represent a significant threat to biodiversity throughout Cape Verde. A number of vegetative species, including *Lantana camara*, *Fulgcraea gigantesca*, *Furcraea foetida* and *Dicrostacys cinerea,* have spread from agricultural areas to adjacent wild lands throughout the islands. In addition, reforestation projects have until recently used almost exclusively exotic tree species, predominantly pine and *Eucalyptus spp*. in the higher, more humid zones, and *Acacia* and *Prosopis spp*. in the arid zones. Reforestation has taken place mainly in already degraded areas. These areas are typically composed of highly varied, mixed species forests that can provide appropriate habitat for some native species. In other areas, however, monoculture reforestation has been undertaken, effectively eliminating native plant species. In marine ecosystems, little is known regarding the exotic species distribution caused by the ballast water discharge of tourist ships. There has been no control over the spread of IAS in Cape Verdean ecosystems and little knowledge in regards to the fact that certain species that were being actively planted for erosion control constituted a threat to native vegetation.

* + - 1. Overharvesting of biological resources

Box . Environmental Issues Linked to Mass Tourism in Cape Verde

One of the PPG studies identified several issues linked to mass tourism developments in Cape Verde: *(i)* Non adherence to the EIA. Permissions are often sought retrospectively after investors have started work, and permissions obtained even when laws and building regulations have been broken; *(ii)* Boundaries of protected areas are ignored and land is sold within protected areas; *(iii)* Legal 80 metre coastal setbacks are constantly ignored and developments constructed within these zones; *(iv)* Continuous ribbon developments are constructed - Continuous lines of tourist related developments adjacent to the shoreline (Ribbon Development), as developed in Sal and proposed in the ZDTI of Boa Vista, are both environmentally and socially detrimental, and ultimately inhibit the development of a tourism industry by becoming unattractive to visitors by limiting access and views to the beach and sea; *(v)* Natural sea defences are destroyed, damaged or impaired (dune systems, coral reef); and *(vi)* Natural beach and dune recharging is impaired; *(vii)* Environmentally damaging tourist activities take place (quad biking on beaches and dunes).

**Source:** Sillitoe, A. (2009): *“PPG-Project phase GEF-4176 Consolidation of Cape Verde’s Protected Areas System: Ecotourism & Livelihoods”*

Fuel-wood extraction has had a severe negative impact on the native vegetation in Cape Verde, as there is virtually no alternative cooking fuel that is affordable and available to the low-income rural householder. In addition, native plant harvesting for medicinal and traditional uses has reduced certain species’ populations, including endemic ones. There is no control on the harvest of NTFP, except in PAs that have been operationalised. Subsistence hunting of native fauna, particularly birds (e.g. *Calonectris edwardsii,* *Halcyon leucocephala* and *Passer ssp*.), contributes to natural resource overexploitation in terrestrial ecosystems, although public education campaigns by INIDA have reduced this practice in recent years. In terms of marine biodiversity, Cape Verde’s fishing resources in general are still under-exploited; in 1999 the INDP assessed that only 25% of the estimated sustainable yield of fish was being exploited, with considerable scope for expansion of fishing activities.[[17]](#footnote-18) The fishing industry (both industrial and artisanal) concentrates on different pelagic species, the most important being tuna fish (several species from the genus *Thunnus*), as well as crustaceous. Studies carried out during the Project Preparation Grant (PPG) stage showed, however, that certain species of lobster, including the green lobster (*Panulirus regius*), brown lobster (*Panulirus equinatus*) and rock lobster (*Scyllarides latus*), which are valuable export products, are being overexploited locally, in spite of regulations banning their catch during the reproductive season. This overexploitation has been driven by demand from the tourism industry on Sal and Boavista. Cape Verde has significantly increased the number of fishing permits issued to foreign vessels in the past ten years. Because of limited capacity, monitoring and enforcement in the Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), it is difficult to prevent overfishing and the loss of revenue due to illegal, unreported and unregulated fishing.

* + - 1. Climate change

Today, land degradation and alien invasive species are the main threats to biodiversity on the Cape Verde Islands. However, in the upcoming decades, climate change will no doubt be the single most significant threat. Forecasts of climate change scenarios for the country highlight significant negative effects on the biodiversity status of both terrestrial and marine ecosystems. Several niche habitats may be lost due to climate change, exacerbating the threat level in some ecosystems and even triggering the extinction of less resilient species. A rising sea level, as a result of climate change, will also likely exacerbate pre-existing beach erosion problems, impacting coral, marine turtles and other organisms. Also, changes in sea temperature attributable to climate change may increase the frequency of coral bleaching events.[[18]](#footnote-19)

### Long-term solution and barriers to achieving the solution

1. The proposed **long-term solution** for biodiversity conservation in Cape Verde is to strengthen and consolidate the country’s nascent PA System. This should provide effective protection of critical areas of globally significant biodiversity and allow the Cape Verde government and other stakeholders to discern that sustainable economic development is based on sound natural resource management supported by environmental conservation. [[19]](#footnote-20)
2. This long-term solution rests on three main pillars. First, strengthening of the institutional, policy and legal framework for PA management, with particular respect to financial sustainability. Second, increasing the level of operationalisation of sites so that Cape Verde can gain experience in PA management and can avert direct threats to the biodiversity contained in PAs and MPAs. This is particularly pressing for MPAs. Third, widespread dissemination of stakeholder participation in PA management and different models piloted. The sustainability of sites is ensured when adjacent communities and partners have a stake in the decision making process concerning PAs/MPAs and the benefits derived from their management can be equitably shared. There are key barriers to the long-term solution which preclude the emergence and operation of the above three pillars. They are described below.

**Barrier 1) The legal, policy and institutional frameworks require strengthening to enable effective PA management.**

* Cape Verde’s PA System is at an early developmental stage, requiring significant institutional and management support to become more operational and effective. The bulk of the laws relating to biodiversity are incomplete and have been limited to creating paper parks. The legal and policy frameworks need to be supplemented by specific regulations (e.g. there are no existing by-laws for the protection of specific threatened and endangered native flora and fauna, nor any regulations on land-tenure within PAs). While there are many laws and regulations pertaining to resource use (e.g. limitations and prohibitions on grazing, forestry and fishing within certain areas), these laws cannot be enforced effectively in PAs and buffer zones in the absence of widely endorsed management plans. Management plans and structures that can provide site-level surveillance are virtually non-existent.
* Another challenge of consolidating the PA system is that of mainstreaming biodiversity into relevant policies. In 1994, legislation was passed establishing several Integrated Tourism Development Areas (ZDTI) on islands with a tourism vocation (i.e. Sal, Boavista and Maio).[[20]](#footnote-21) PPG studies have pointed out the doubtful effectiveness of the EIA as a regulatory instrument.[[21]](#footnote-22) For example, in close proximity of some ZDTIs are gazetted PAs/MPAs (see e.g. the map of Sal Island in ), which pose direct threats to the biodiversity that is being protected. Policy guidance contained in the PANA II document states that, from 2007 onwards, at least 50% of the average annual tourism rate increases through eco-tourism. This is in contradiction with expansion plans announced by investors and the tourism development sector of the government. Cape Verde urgently needs to re-evaluate its tourism industry and develop and adopt a national tourism policy framework and national tourism master plan. This dialogue between the conservation and Tourism sector has not yet started. The same dialogue logic applies to the fisheries and agrarian sectors, given that the uncontrolled expansion of cultivated areas and of the fishing effort would pose a threat to biodiversity (refer to the chapter on ‘’ for more detail). A frank dialogue between the sectors has not yet started. The UNDP Capacity Development Scorecard has yielded the following results with respect to capacity gaps in DGA:[[22]](#footnote-23)
  + There are some persons or institutions actively pursuing a protected area agenda, but they have little effect or influence.
  + Some political will exists, but it is not strong enough to make a difference.
  + There is limited support for protected areas.
  + Some partnerships are in place, but there are significant gaps and existing partnerships achieve little.
* Another key challenge to enable ‘consolidation’ is the creation of a responsible institution dedicated to PA management.[[23]](#footnote-24) This authority would be expected to have sufficient organizational and human capacities to implement policies that promote conservation through collaborative agreements (e.g. with fisheries, tourism, private land-owners, real-estate developers, local government). However the baseline of the country’s capacity for PA management is low. In fact, in all five topic areas of capacity contained in UNDP’s Capacity Development Scorecard for PA Management[[24]](#footnote-25), Cape Verde scored below 50%. The cadre in charge of PA management in the capital is small and has considerable training needs for technicians, site managers and rangers.
* An unclear land tenure system is a grave issue in the consolidation of Cape Verde’s PA System. The implementation of Phase I faced the unexpected fact that much of the land in Serra Malagueta and Monte Gordo Natural Parks had private owners. The prevailing system of land ownership and land use in Cape Verde poses a challenge to effective resource conservation. In many PAs, ownership and use of agricultural land are separated (e.g. *parceria*), leading to no incentive for those using the land to manage it over the long-term. In some cases (e.g *renda*) disincentives exist for land users to undertake improvement of production systems through soil and water conservation, as such improvements only increase the rent paid by tenant farmers.
* The existing technical and human capacity for developing and managing the national PA system is linked to projects, and is therefore highly dependent on donor funding, without necessarily being institutionalized. Consolidating, up-scaling, redeploying and financing this capacity will also pose challenges and require a strategic approach.
* Financial aspects of PA management also represent a challenge, both from a cost and from a revenue point of view. Visitor fees, licenses/taxes, payments for ecosystem services (PES), etc. are not yet being used to finance conservation. Also, the environment fund appears not to have been replenished. A thorough analysis of PA finance issues was carried out during the PPG phase and indicated that: (i) PA revenues are not being retained by the PA system; (ii) No fiscal instruments such as taxes on tourism and water or tax breaks are in place to promote PA financing; and (iii) No business plans were ever developed for any of the PA sites. The total Score on UNDP’s Financial Sustainability Scorecard for PA Systems was only 17%, which is very low. (Refer to for detailed information on financial aspects of PA management and to for the full results of the Scorecard.)
* Finally, most PA units in Cape Verde are relatively small and contain significant areas of highly vulnerable dryland ecosystems as well as of coral, both of which may not be sufficiently resilient to withstand abrupt climatic change conditions. Cape Verde has not yet taken climate change aspects into their long-term PA/MPA planning and strategising. This issue looms high on the horizon.

**Barrier 2) Only a fraction of the PA estate is currently operational; capacities and financial resources remain scarce to face the up-scaling and consolidation challenges.**

* The UNDP-GEF Phase I project and other initiatives related to PA management have accomplished the placement of PAs into the national agenda, but only a fraction of Cape Verde’s PA system has been made operational (8% of the terrestrial PA sub-system, 6% of the overall PA/MPA estate and less than 1% of the country’s land surface)[[25]](#footnote-26). All of the MPAs created by Decree 3/2003, which cover 40,245 ha of coastal land and seascape, plus 24,711 ha of terrestrial PAs (i.e. 92% of the terrestrial PAs’ sub-set), remain to be made operational.[[26]](#footnote-27)
* Financial resources that support conservation work are scarce, including those from the GEF. The challenge is, on the one hand, to maximize the area made operational for every dollar spent on PAs/MPAs (from both co-financing and GEF) and, on the other, to ensure a balanced development and maturation of the overall PA system with respect to ecosystem coverage. This latter aspect is particularly important for Cape Verde, given a certain bias towards terrestrial PAs in previous interventions, but equally due to the asymmetrical financial power and political leverage that the mass tourism sector has in Cape Verde as compared to the environment and conservation sectors.
* The pressure on coastal areas and marine resources, coupled with Cape Verde’s archipelagic nature and decentralized administrative structures, is resulting in additional threats to marine and coastal biodiversity conservation.
* In addition, experience with PA management planning is still limited. So far only two PA management plans have been prepared for all of the PAs/MPAs in Cape Verde, and PA business planning is still an untried concept in the country. The challenge with respect to consolidating and up-scaling PA management requires mainstreaming human and financial resources so as to enhance PA management effectiveness with the most extensive and ecosystem-balanced coverage possible.

**Barrier 3) Participatory approaches to conservation in Cape Verde are still limited.**

* The majority of inhabitants and economic actors within and surrounding the PAs/MPAs are highly dependent on natural resource use for their livelihoods. The tourism sector profits exclusively from the natural beauty offered by the islands’ biodiversity. The bulk of the population’s livelihoods rely heavily on a combination of subsistence agriculture and extensive livestock rearing and artisanal fisheries.[[27]](#footnote-28) Yet very few people are aware of the fact that unsound use of natural resources exacerbated by careless environmental management can lead to catastrophic results for everyone concerned. Research stresses the need for stakeholders’ engagement in the management of PAs. It also warns about the incipient national awareness of the pivotal role of PAs’ in the country’s development and environmental sustainability. Indeed, this is corroborated by the results of the UNDP Financial Sustainability Scorecard for National PA Systems (), which shows that economic data on the contribution of protected areas to local and national development is virtually non-existent.
* There are several factors contributing to the PA’s weak participatory management. (1) Subsistence farmers and artisanal and commercial fishers will resort to activities that degrade biodiversity if no alternative livelihoods are available. This is because meeting the subsistence needs of the family unit is a primordial need; (2) planning for development in the real-estate and tourism industries, especially on coastal areas, have so far omitted or placed little value on environmental impacts, notably biodiversity impacts; and (3) local governments are unaware of environmental sustainability issues, and are consequently ill-equipped to gauge and prevent negative impacts. Awareness raising is a vital step needed so that local governments can play a more active role in the management of PAs/MPAs.
* The paramount challenge is therefore to ostensibly demonstrate to the population at large, especially decision-makers at all levels, the linkage between sustainable livelihoods and sound natural resource management supported by environmental conservation. This will allow the regulation of the use of resources at the site level in a manner that realizes the economic potential of PAs/MPAs; and the reduction of the cost of conservation per unit area by involving adjacent communities in the conservation effort. The overall resulting effect will be to substantiate that sustainable approaches towards resource management and environment conservation lead to rural poverty reduction.

### Introduction to Project Sites

1. Of the twenty critical terrestrial habitants identified in Cape Verde’s National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP), seven were selected for the establishment of the country’s first terrestrial PAs. Within the phased approach conceived for the previous GEF-supported project (Phase I), two terrestrial sites, representative of these habitats, were the focus of activities during the first phase of the programme (Serra Malagueta and Monte Gordo Natural Parks), while four sites would be the focus of a second phase. These sites (the Natural Parks of Monte Verde, Chã das Caldeiras, Morroços and Cova/Paúl/RªTorre) are now targeted for operationalisation through the proposed project. Their choice as targeted project sites was confirmed during the PPG stage.
2. Within the consolidating approach embraced by this project, coastal/marine sites will be equally targeted for operationalisation. This has been shown to be particularly relevant and rather urgent, given that since the creation of Cape Verde’s PA System, only one of the 26 MPAs gazetted by Decree-Law 3/2003 has been operationalised.[[28]](#footnote-29) The pressure from threats to biodiversity on MPAs is likely more intense than on terrestrial PAs, particularly in the face of inaction. This project’s approach is therefore to bring the level of operationalisation of the MPAs to a much higher level, and is facilitated by the fact that the most important MPAs are concentrated on only three islands (Sal, Boavista and Maio). During the PPG phase, thorough consultations were carried out with a view towards establishing a coordinated approach with key partners that support the conservation sector in Cape Verde. In particular, WWF Cape Verde is expecting funding from several sources for the establishment of an Island-Wide Office on Maio Island and for undertaking MPA strengthening on that island. Hence, the consensus decision was that GEF support provided through this project for MPA operationalisation should focus on Sal and Boavista.
3. Through the establishment of Island-Wide PA offices for Sal and Boavista, it will be possible to provide more direct and specialized support to the MPAs on those islands than would otherwise not be possible by operating out of the capital, Praia, which is on Santiago Island. Island-Wide Offices will provide support to all of the MPAs on Sal and Boavista, including, if feasible and applicable, the few and small terrestrial sites on those islands.[[29]](#footnote-30) This support will, however, become fragmented if activities in all of the covered MPAs reach the same level of intensity (e.g. more detailed management planning, ecological monitoring and more intensified community engagement). The number of gazetted MPAs is fairly high for both Sal and Boavista (9 and 10 respectively)[[30]](#footnote-31) and hence, in line with what had been proposed in the PIF, there has been an exercise in prioritisation during the PPG phase in order to choose at least two concentration sites on each of the islands.
4. Furthermore, there has been an exercise in consolidation of sites during the PPG stage and in proposals for expansion of the existing legal MPA estate on those islands. On Boavista Island this project is proposing the establishment of a large MPA on the East of the island, which will consolidate several of the sites gazetted through Decree-Law 3/2003. On Sal, the concentration will be on two MPAs, both of which will consolidate several pre-existing gazetted sites, one on the South-West of the island and the other on the South-East, while also expanding towards the sea.
5. provides an overview of the PAs and MPAs that will be established and operationalised by the project. Reference is also made to project maps in and to the very detailed information contained in the PA Management Effectiveness Tracking tool (METT) in .

Table 2. Overview of Project Intervention Sites

| **Name of PA / MPA and Area** | **New PA/MPA** | **Biome type** | **Key Characteristics** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|
|  |
| **MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island**  *Proposed area:*  *Total 5,166 ha*  *Landscape 945 ha*  *Seascape 4,221 ha* | Yes [1] | Coastal and marine | The area is located on the southeast of Sal Island and stretches over approximately 9 km of white sand beaches with sparse vegetation. The relief is mostly flat along Costa da Fragata and slightly elevated at Serra Negra. The flora, which is not exclusively native, includes *Ipomoea brasiliensis, Sporobolus sp., Heliotropium curassavicum and Ruppia maritime*, and some specimens of *Tamarix senegalensis.* The coast is one of the main spawning areas for the threatened sea turtle *Caretta caretta* in the West African Marine Ecoregion (WAMER)*.* The cliffs of Serra Negra are an important area for several bird species, including *Phaethon aethereus, Pandion haliaetus* and *Falco alexandri*. There is a high diversity of coral communities found along the coastline, which is also an important nursery area for pelagic fish. Both The MPAs of Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata and Ponta do Sinó are in close proximity to the Santa Maria tourist village. Sal Island received over 180,000 tourists in 2007. |
| **MPA Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island**  *Proposed area:*  *Total 4,894 ha*  *Landscape 49 ha*  *Seascape 4,845 ha* | Yes [2] | Coastal and Marine | The area is characterized by high marine biodiversity, and hosts several endemic species, making it an important site within the WAMER: *Arthrocnemum glaucum, Zygophylum waterlotii, Z. fontanesii, Sesuvium sesuvioides, Philoxerus vermicularis, Cyperus bubosos, Limonium brunneri.* Many migratory birds are also present during spring and autumn. The marine environment has not been studied extensively, however, it is known that there is a rocky bottom covered with a great diversity of coral communities. |
| **Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista, Boavista Island**  *Proposed area:*  *Total 39,214 ha*  *Landscape 13,913 ha*  *Seascape 25,301 ha* | Yes [3] | Coastal and Marine | The area extends over a large swath of coastal and marine areas in the eastern part of Boavista Island, from Ponta Ajudante in the South to Derrubado in the North, and consolidates several MPAs (see table note #3 below). It also includes a few low altitude hills in its terrestrial zones (Ponta de Chã de Tarrafe and Pico da Estância – or Monte Estância – with 387 m, which is a gazetted PA). There are several fauna and flora communities representative of Cape Verde coastal and marine ecosystems. The main spawning area for the *Caretta caretta* sea turtle in Cape Verde is also in Eastern Boavista, and this has been the main driving criteria behind the decision for MPA consolidation. Coastal vegetation includes *Sporobolus spicatus, Cakile maritima, Sesuvium sesuvioides, Zygophylum fontanesii* and *Z. Simplex*. The most representative species in the lagoon areas are *Arthrocnemum glaucum,* *Z. waterlotii, Z. fontanesii, Sporobolus minutus,* and *S. Cyperus bulbosus spicatus*. The associated avifauna includes *Charadrius alexandrinus, Himantopus himantopus, Arenaria interpres, Pluvialis squatarola, Tringa nebularia, Ardea cinerea, Egretta garcetta, Bulbucus ibis, Platalea leucorodia* and *Pandion haliaetus.* Coral communities along this coastline are the most diverse and abundant in the whole of Cape Verde and the coast is considered one of the World’s top-ten sites for coral biodiversity. In the coastal waters of Eastern Boavista, several species of shark and pelagic fish reproduce. |
| **Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park, Fogo Island**  *Gazetted area:*  *8,469 ha* | No | Terrestrial | The area circles the crater of the Pico do Fogo Volcano. Native flora includes 31 endemic species (84% of the island endemics), with five found almost exclusively in Bordeira and in the crater area (*Echium vulcanorum*, *Erysimum caboverdeanum*, *Tornabenea tenuissima*, *Verbascum cystolithicum* and *Diplotaxis hirta*). Native fauna is represented by *Falco tinnunculus*, *Apus alexandri*, *Pterodroma feae*, *Corvus ruficollis*, *Passer hispaniolensis*, *Sylvia atricapilla* and *Mabuya fogoensis fogoensis*. 48% of these species are listed in the Cape Verde Red list. Similar to Monte Gordo, Chã das Calderiras receives frost during the winter months. There are approximately 3000 people living within and around the PA. The native vegetation, soil and water quality of the area are threatened by overgrazing and fuel wood gathering, and overexploitation of the natural springs. |
| **Monte Verde Natural Park, São Vicente Island**  *Gazetted area: 800 ha* | No | Terrestrial | Almost the entire range of the floral species and communities of São Vicente Island are represented in Monte Verde, which has 34 endemic plant species, one of which exists only on Sao Vicente, as well as three rare bird species and one rare insect species. Of the 93 plant species identified in the area, 17 are noted as threatened on the Cape Verde Red List. The area is practically uninhabited (< 5 households within the area and no more than 40 around it), but its proximity to Mindelo (the Island’s capital) and to other localities puts pressure on resources which is further exacerbated by a lack of access control and management. Threats to the area include land clearance for agriculture and home construction that destroys native plant communities, as well as visitors’ impact on native plants, soil and water quality. |
| **Morroços Natural Park, Santo Antão**  *Gazetted area:*  *671 ha* | No | Terrestrial | The area, which is at a high altitude (1400-1800 m) and is an important recharge area for the local aquifer, consists of a sequence of climatic zones ranging from a dry zone at the lower elevations to a sub-humid zone on the slopes and peaks of several of its mountains. The climatic zones’ diversity is also responsible for a high floral diversity, including floral communities that remain largely untouched by human activity and that are still dominated by native species. The project site will be the most significant biodiversity hotspot on Santo Antão Island. Today the area is practically deserted, with only four houses and not more than 10 people living in the Park and in the area immediately adjacent, although it is sometimes used by other communities as a source of medicinal and foraging plants, many of which are endemic. |
| **Cova, Paúl and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park, Santo Antão**  *Gazetted area:*  *3,217 ha* | No | Terrestrial | The area incorporates a significant representative area of humid mountain ecosystem and includes the greatest centre of endemic plant diversity in Cape Verde. It harbours large swaths of untouched land, although native vegetation is threatened by fuel wood collection and exotic species invasion. The entire area suffers from a lack of planning or regulation of any kind. Such management limitation threatens the area’s biodiversity, water quality and tourism potential. There are at least 10 small communities, with an estimated population of less than 2,000 people, living within the PA’s boundaries and in its immediate surroundings. |

**Notes:**

[1] The new MPA incorporates and consolidates some coastal/marine sites that are already gazetted by Decree-Law 3/2003, but it also includes a significant expansion of the marine area towards the sea. The originally gazetted sites are: Costa da Fragata Natural Reserve (351.68 ha); Serra Negra Natural Reserve (335.9 ha); and Salinas de Santa Maria Protected Landscape (78.44 ha).

[2] The new MPA includes the Ponta do Sinó Natural Reserve (89.28 ha), which is a coastal/marine site that is already gazetted by Decree-Law 3/2003, but it also includes a significant expansion of the marine area towards the sea and towards the North.

[3] The new MPA (called on an interim basis as “Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista”) incorporates and consolidates some coastal/marine sites that are already gazetted by Decree-Law 3/2003, but it also includes a significant expansion of the marine area towards the sea. The originally gazetted sites are: the Natural Park do Norte (with 8,964.64 ha of landscape and 7,524.45 ha of seascape, totalling 16,489.09 ha); Tartaruga Natural Reserve (1,766.42 ha); the four Integrated Natural Reserves of Ilhéu de Baluarte (7.65 ha); Ilhéu dos Pássaros (0.68 ha); Ilhéu de Curral Velho (0.51 ha); and the Curral Velho Protected Landscape (1,636.87 ha).

### Stakeholder analysis

1. As stated earlier, the General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), under the Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM), has the mandate and the primary responsibility for the management of all PAs in Cape Verde, including policy development and partnerships.
2. below contains a summary the major categories of stakeholders and their involvement in the project. More detailed information is contained in .

Table 3. Key stakeholders and roles and responsibilities

| **Stakeholder** | **Roles and Responsibilities** |
| --- | --- |
| General Directorate for the Environment – DGA | DGA will be the projects’ national executing agency, until such a moment when the PAAA is effectively created and other arrangements can be made. It is hence the institution that is primarily responsible for project delivery. The DGA’s mandate includes responsibilities for developing and submitting policies and strategies with respect to the broader environment sector, and PA management, where it also retains a direct implementation role. Among other key attributes, the DGA is equally responsible for coordinating with other agencies on all matters pertaining to the environment sector and managing EIA processes. Leadership in the DGA is supportive of the creation of a specialized agency for PA management. |
| MADRRM - Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources; and under it several general directorates and linked institutions  Plus others | The institutions within or linked to the MADDRM include *inter alia*: DGASP- Department of Agriculture, Livestock and Fisheries; DGP - General Directorate for Fisheries; INGRH - National Institute for Water Resource Management; and INIDA - National Institute for Agrarian Development; and INMG - National Institute of Meteorology and Geophysics. Other important national institutions not linked to the MADDRM may include: INDP - National Institute for Fisheries’ Research; and DGDT - General Directorate for Tourism Development. Their role will be to collaborate with the DGA in project implementation, providing technical inputs, and coordination of activities. They may come to form part of the Project’s Technical Committee (TAC), and some of them, as in the Phase I Project, may also form part of the Steering Committee (PSC). |
| Local Government on Sal, Boavista, Santo Antão, Fogo and São Vicente Island | Several key local government entities were consulted during the PPG phase, both at the island level as well as at the level of key municipalities for the project. They have unanimously offered their support to the project but also expressed expectations with respect to the management of sites. Some municipalities, e.g. the Porto Novo Municipal Council that will also host the new LDCF project, have deployed a forestry specialist to work on sites. Local governments will play a key role in the establishment of PA Advisory Councils at the local level. |
| Development partners (bilateral and multilateral development agencies) | The Austrian Development Agency and the Spanish Development Cooperation are project co-financiers and will be members of the PSC, once it is formed. The European Union and the French Development Agency are also highly relevant partners, but a co-financing commitment remains pending. Both agencies have several relevant interventions in the environment area, including the EU’s plans to finance the operationalisation of the MPAs Baía da Murdeira and St. Luzia, as well as watershed management projects on the Fogo, Brava and Santo Antão Islands, which focus on drip-irrigation and forest rehabilitation (the EU is a partner in the LDCF project). France has also made substantial investments in the Water Sector. The DGCI- General Directorate for International Cooperation ensures donor coordination and harmonisation at the government level. |
| US Peace Corps in Cape Verde | The Peace Corps is providing co-financing to the project and will be a member of the PSC, once it is formed. During the Phase I Project, the Peace Corps availed several volunteers that worked on project sites side-by-side with national experts and in close interaction with the local communities. The same successful model will also be adopted in this project with the deployment of at least six volunteers throughout the project. |
| WWF Cape Verde | WWF has been involved in the project since its conception (PIF stage) and contributed significantly to the development of the MPA component. WWF is expected to get involved in the operationalisation of the Marine Park of Baía da Murdeira, a very important site ecologically on Sal Island, which will be supported by the project’s Island Wide Office (IWO). WWF will also be directly involved in project implementation by reinforcing the capacities of the IWO, and by drawing on the organisations’ cadre of technical experts in PA management, not just in Cape Verde but also regionally and globally. |
| Regional Coastal and Marine Conservation Programme for West Africa (PRCM) | PRCM is a regional multi-donor and multi-stakeholder Regional Coastal and Marine Conservation Programme for West Africa (PRCM). All of the key NGOs involved in PRCM (UICN, FIBA, WWF, WETLAND international) are potential partners of the current project’s activities, but WWF, which has a representation in Cape Verde will likely be the focal point for it. The BIOMAC project promotes information exchange and capacity building in regards to biodiversity conservation. They are interested in contributing technically to the GEF project by supporting stakeholder involvement and capacity building. |
| Environmental NGOs at the central and local levels | Several conservation NGOs are active at the central and local level in Cape Verde. Also, the SGP is being currently launched and there is strong interest both from the government and the NGOs to establish collaboration. Some of the NGOs consulted during the PPG process that manifested an interest in the project include Amigos da Natureza (AAN), which is affiliated to the international NGO Friends of the Earth; NATURA 2000, which evolved from a Spanish financed project that focused on MPAs; ATMAR, local NGO working on São Vicente, São Nicolau and Santo Antão; as well as SOS Tartaruga and TURTLE Foundation, both of which are focused on marine turtle conservation. The former is active on several islands, but mostly on Sal, and the later on Boavista. They may play an important role in the ecological monitoring of turtle emergencies (a project indicator). |
| Other local NGOs and CSOs | Several other NGOs/CSO’s are engaged in actions within the environment or related sector and showed an interest in the project. These are the Fishing community of Palmeira (on Sal Island); COSPE (Fogo), which is focused on local development; Youth Centre of Boavista; Community association of Lajedos (Santo Antão); Land Owners and Grogue Producers’ Association (Santo Antão); Farmers’ Association from Cova. Cape Verde Women’s Organization (OMCV) also expressed an interest in the project, in particular due to their small project on sustainable tourism on Fogo Island. |
| Private sector tourism operators on Sal and Boavista Islands | Several members of the tourism industry, including the parastatal CVI (Cape Verde Investment Society), which is responsible for sectoral promotion on Sal and Boavista, were consulted during the PPG phase. The large majority manifested an interest in getting involved in the project. The support of the private sector will prove to be crucial in terms of sustaining PAs and the participatory management modalities that will be developed for them. |

### Baseline analysis

1. Baseline programs may be divided into three main areas, with respect to their alignment with the three proposed project outcomes/components (as in the PIF). These are described below.

1) Governance framework for the expansion, consolidation and sustainability of the National PAs system is strengthened:

Cape Verde’s legal, policy and institutional frameworks for PA management have been showing encouraging signs in the past decade. An important feature is the recently completed UNDP-GEF project (2004-2009), or “Phase I Project”, which has focused on terrestrial PAs, and has successfully helped create a new PA system. More specifically, the project was instrumental in the establishment of a basic legal framework for PAs, and in legally establishing the current PA/MPA estate. There have been significant improvements in the available technical and human capacity, particularly in the Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources, although much of this capacity is still embedded in projects. In addition, DGASP, which manages much of the land bordering the PAs, has become increasingly aware of and focused on conservation in PAs. A 2006 law on environmental impact assessment allows controlling the proposed planning for development in and around PAs. A recent law on Forest Resources also represents an important legal tool for conservation. Draft laws to protect endangered native flora and fauna, and to create a national agency for PAs, have been written in the past two years, but not yet scrutinized and passed. Generally, public awareness and support for PAs and conservation has also increased, with more support among decision-makers, the general public and civil society organizations. With regards to the marine environment, several recent programs have strengthened Cape Verde’s capacity to manage MPAs, including: (1) the National Research and Marine Biodiversity Conservation Programme (2002-2006); (2) the Cabo Verde Natura 2000 (1999-2001) project, which undertook coastal planning and natural resource management and first proposed the creation of a National PAs network in Cape Verde; (3) the Coastal Zone Management Project (2004-2008), which is establishing a policy for the utilization and management of coastal areas; and (4) the on-going PRCM Programme, which is establishing a knowledge exchange base at the regional level for supporting PA management. In terms of management authority for the PA System, the Phase I Project has contributed to the completion of key institutional feasibility studies for the creation of a dedicated institution for PA management.

2) Management effectiveness at selected terrestrial and coastal/marine PAs is enhanced

The Phase I Project was directly responsible for the establishment of the first two PAs in the country (the Natural Parks of Serra Malagueta and Monte Gordo) with management planning & structures, site committees, trained staff and equipment. It has also assisted in the establishment of a framework for an enhanced fight against IAS in and around terrestrial PAs. A partnership with the Canary Islands government played an important role in enhancing the capacity for the management of terrestrial PAs, due to the similar conditions in both Macaronesian archipelagos. Although the PAs that were effectively operatoinalised during the Phase I Project are restricted in size, the PA managers in Cape Verde have had first-hand experience with what is necessary to increase the level of management effectiveness of PAs.[[31]](#footnote-32) A small cadre of experts and PA managers can now be responsible for replicating and disseminating this experience to other sites and for enhancing the overall management effectiveness of the country’s PA System. This is a key achievement.

3) The sustainability of PAs is strengthened through community mobilization & local capacity building for sustainable resource management within and surrounding PAs

The Phase I Project has piloted some of the first participatory approaches to conservation involving adjacent communities and other stakeholders. The project equally promoted awareness-raising at all levels and helped disseminate alternative livelihood modes among community members through self-organised groups.[[32]](#footnote-33) Other initiatives, mostly NGO driven, have also contributed to participatory landscape and seascape management in Cape Verde. In 2008, a group of artisanal fishermen on Maio Island approached the government and proposed an MPA with the purpose of preserving fish and squid stocks that were scarce in a specific area. Although participatory approaches to development in Cape Verde are not new, they are still fairly new when applied to environmental conservation. The strides that were made in the past few years were therefore very important for paving the way for the consolidation of Cape Verde’s PA System.

1. All these initiatives constitute a solid baseline for this proposed project.

## PART II: Strategy

### Project Rationale and Policy Conformity

#### Fit with the GEF Focal Area Strategy and Strategic Programme

1. The project is consistent with the GEF Strategic Objective 1: It catalyzes the Sustainability of PAs, and fulfils the eligibility criteria under Strategic Programme 2: Increasing Representation of Effectively Managed Marine Protected Area Networks in Protected Area Systems, as well as Strategic Programme 3: Strengthened Terrestrial Protected Area Networks. The choice of focusing on two Strategic Priorities makes particular sense as an approach for strengthening Cape Verde’s overall PA System, given the country’s archipelagic nature and the inter-relatedness of its ecosystems.
2. This project is part of the GEF’s Strategic Programme for West Africa (SPWA), Sub-component on Biodiversity, and it relates to its overarching Objective #3 of ‘Consolidating Protected Area Networks’, as the project seeks to operationalise existing PAs and to consolidate new ones (MPAs in this case) and increase the overall management effectiveness of the PA System. The focus is on visible results on the ground – most of the project’s funding will go towards project Components 1 and 2, which will deal with the functionality of the PA System overall and with PA site operationalisation, respectively.
3. The project will significantly increase coverage of both the area and the ecosystem of the PAs/MPAs in Cape Verde by: (i) making operational four terrestrial protected areas on three different islands (Fogo, São Vicente and Santo Antão), covering an area of 13,158 hectares, (ii) consolidating several MPAs on Sal and Boavista Islands into three large MPAs and expanding the original coverage of these MPAs 3 nautical miles into the sea for the purpose of fisheries’ protection; and also making these new proposed MPAs operational; and (iii) supporting Island-Wide conservation planning for all of the MPAs on Sal and Boavista Islands, covering 59,915 hectares of land and seascape. Altogether, this will be one of the project’s main achievements and is an achievement that departs from the currently low baseline of PA/MPA operationlisation (see further down and refer to the METT results contained in ).
4. At the PA system level, the project will: (i) strengthen the legal, policy, institutional and financial framework to support 99,910 hectares of an expanded protected land and seascape estate; (ii) more specifically, support the establishment of a Protected Area Autonomous Authority (PAAA) with a technically and managerially capable staff complement; and (iii) forge strategic partnerships for enhancing the overall sustainability of the PA System, including improvements in its financial sustainability. The governance framework to be supported by the project will result in improvements in the management effectiveness of the entire national PA system, through capacity strengthening of PA institutions and units, management and business planning, policies, laws and regulations.

Table 4. Overview of PA/MPA Operationalisation based on the Expanded System

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Exclusively Terrestrial Protected Areas** | | |  | **MPAs (including proposed consolidated areas♦)** | | |
| **PA Unit or group of PAs** | **PA Unit Area (ha)** | **% of PA Network** |  | **MPA Units, Island name ( # of units in parenthesis)** | **MPA total (ha)** | **% of MPA Network** |
| Parque Natural da Serra Malagueta\* | 1,200 | 4% |  | Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista (1)♦ \*\* | 39,214 | 54% |
| Parque Natural do Monte Gordo\* | 2,500 | 9% |  | Remainder of the MPAs on Boavista Island to be supported by IWO (4) \*\* | 5,777 | 8% |
| Parque Natural do Monte Verde\*\* | 800 | 3% |  | MPAs Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata and Ponta do Sinó on Sal Island (2)♦ \*\* | 10,060 | 14% |
| Parque Natural Chã das Caldeiras\*\* | 8,469 | 31% |  | Remainder of the MPAs on Sal Island to be supported by IWO (5)\*\* | 4,864 | 7% |
| Parque Natural Morroços\*\* | 671 | 2% |  | Maio Island (6) | 7,475 | 10% |
| Parque Natural Cova/Paúl/RªTorre\*\* | 3,217 | 12% |  | Santa Luzia Island (1) | 3,500 | 5% |
| Other terrestrial PA Units (non-operational) | 10,791 | 39% |  | Islets and other minor sites (3) | 1,450.00 | 2% |
| **Total terrestrial PA sub-set\*\*\*** | **27,648** | **100%** |  | **Total MPA subset\*\*\*** | **72,340** | **100%** |
| **Total terrestrial PAs to be operationalised by project** | **13,157** | **48%** |  | **Total MPAs to be operationalised and supported by project** | **59,915** | **83%** |
| **Total terrestrial and marine PAs: 73,072 ha or 73% of the expanded PA/MPA estate will be operationalised by the project** | | | | | | |

\* PA units made operational by the Phase I Project

\*\* PA/MPA units that will be made operational by the proposed GEF and others supported by Island Wide Offices (IWO)

\*\*\* Two terrestrial PA units on Boavista Island with a total of 2,400 hectares have been excluded from the calculations of the future terrestrial PA sub-set (with reference to a discrepancy vis-a-vis the data presented on ), as they will be incorporated in the Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista. Also by comparing the proposed MPA sub-set with the original one in , it is notable that the expansion proposed represents of 27,754 ha or an increase of 34% over the officially gazetted MPA estate and 38% over the entire estate.

♦ Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista = 13,913 ha of coastal landscapes and 25,301 ha of seascape; MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata = 945 ha of coastal landscapes and 4,221 ha of seascape; MPA Ponta do Sinó = 49 ha of coastal landscapes and 4,845 ha of seascape.

#### Rationale and summary of GEF Alternative

1. Protected Areas are a vital tool for the conservation of globally important biodiversity. Cape Verde can be considered a global hotspot for terrestrial and marine biodiversity and, in particular, for endemism. However, Cape Verde’s biodiversity status is being significantly threatened by uncontrolled natural resource extraction, human activities and weak PA management. Natural resource management for Cape Verde PA Network requires vital institutional and capacity building strengthening. In the baseline situation, Cape Verde’s PA system will be limited to two functionally operational terrestrial PA units. The other 19 terrestrial PA units and 26 marine and coastal PA units will remain “paper parks”, and biodiversity at these sites will continue to be severely impacted by unsustainable resource use, land/seascape transformation, and IAS. In addition, the national institutional and policy framework for protected areas will remain incomplete, with PA management at the central level consigned to a small unit within the DGA (that also is charged with numerous other duties) and with little or no integration of MPAs into the existing management framework. In the alternative GEF scenario, systemic and institutional barriers will be removed, enhancing both the area of terrestrial and marine PAs and improving their financial sustainability, management capacities, and monitoring and enforcement regimes. These benefits will extend directly to four 4 terrestrial PAs and 3 MPAs, as well as to the remaining MPAs located on Sal and Boavista, which will be supported by initial operationalisation activities through the Island-Wide Offices, thereby increasing the area of coverage benefiting from active PA management and functioning from 2,700 ha to 76,772 ha[[33]](#footnote-34) by the end of the project. In addition, various MPAs on Sal and Boavista will be consolidated (i.e. or from only 4% of the total expanded estate to 77% of it.).

### Project Goal, Objective, Outcomes and Outputs

1. **The project’s development goal** **is to** conserve globally significant terrestrial and marine biodiversity in priority ecosystems of Cape Verde through a protected area system’s approach.

**The project’s objective is to consolidate and strengthen Cape Verde’s protected areas (PA) System through the establishment of new terrestrial and marine PA units and the promotion of participatory approaches to conservation.**

1. Several barriers have been identified which militate against the project objective (see Section I, Part I). To address these barriers, the project will intervene using a framework composed of three components. These components are in line with the concept presented at the PIF stage;[[34]](#footnote-35) and will be incorporated into three outcomes:

**Outcome 1: The governance framework for the expansion, consolidation and sustainability of the National PA system is strengthened**

**Outcome 2: Management effectiveness at selected terrestrial and coastal/marine PAs is enhanced**

**Outcome 3: The sustainability of PAs is strengthened through community mobilization, sectoral engagement and local capacity building for sustainable resource management within PAs/MPAs and adjacent areas**

1. The approach is ‘integral’ with respect to both the terrestrial and coastal/marine biomes, given the archipelagic nature of Cape Verde. It is also consolidatory because it establishes PAs/MPAs where only “paper parks” existed, including an expansion of the coverage of the estate within the MPA subset through the consolidation of previously gazetted areas and fisheries’ protection seascape. The project will simultaneously focus on PA management effectiveness through a focused intervention on 7 key sites (including terrestrial and marine). All of this will be supported by capacity development actions at the PA System’s level and at the site level with a view towards sustaining the System overall in the long-term.

**Outcome 1) Governance framework for the expansion, consolidation and sustainability of the National PA system is strengthened.**

1. Under Outcome 1, the PA governance supportive frameworks for Cape Verde’s PA System will be strengthened with respect to their policy, legal, institutional and financial aspects, and the total coverage of coastal marine areas will be increased. More specifically, a Protected Areas Autonomous Authority (PAAA) will be created, which will be adequately staffed and engaged in strategic partnerships, with a mandate to coordinate and enforce integrated PA planning and management. New laws and regulations will be prepared and proposed for supporting the consolidation and expansion of new areas, and also for the strengthening of the policy, legal and institutional framework that supports the PA System in Cape Verde. These new laws and regulations will support the PAAA: (i) to clearly define PA boundaries, (ii) to establish visitor fees and other revenue mechanisms, and (iii) to strengthen control and monitoring functions. The PAAA will also count on a series of relevant PA planning and management tools as policy documents that will be prepared according to their urgency and importance. These will be in full implementation by the project’s end and will include: (i) a National PA Zoning Plan; (ii) a National PA Strategy; (iii) a PA Buffer Zone Policy; and (iii) a National PA Business Plan. A strengthened PAAA will also be able to effectively cooperate with relevant sectors, partners and institutions (fisheries, tourism and marine transport departments, NGOs, local authorities and communities, etc.). Finally, improved knowledge and awareness about the interface between climate change and biodiversity conservation in Cape Verde will contribute to PA planning and management.
2. **The expected conservation outcome under Outcome 1** will be that Cape Verde’s PA System will benefit from improved policy, legal, institutional and financial frameworks. The System includes not just the ‘network’ of PAs/MPAs that today represents 72,156 ha of land[[35]](#footnote-36) and seascape but equally the ‘capacities’ at all levels to manage this network (i.e. at systemic, institutional and individual levels’ capacities). This achievement will be primarily assessed against the baseline, as follows: *(i)* Improved financial sustainability of national PAs, measured by at least a 40% increase in scores on the Financial Sustainability Scorecard, and*(ii)*Improved competence levels and standards of institution responsible for PAs, measured by a 20% increase in scores on the Capacity Development Scorecard.
3. The outputs necessary to achieve this outcome are described below.

*Output 1.1 The PA Autonomous Authority (PAAA) is established, operational and appropriately staffed with trained personnel and with a strengthened capacity to manage both terrestrial PAs and MPAs*

The aim under this output it to establish a strong and financially viable new institution for PA management with a clear mandate to manage Cape Verde’s expanded PA System, with several operational PA sites on most islands. This will include not only the supporting legal frameworks that will need to be developed for the purpose, but will also include the supportive human and financial capacity that will allow the PAAA to fulfil its mandate.

*Output 1.2 PA planning and management tools have been developed and are under implementation, including (i) National PA Zoning Plan; (ii) National PA Strategy; and (iii) National PA Business Plan*

The National PA Strategy will be the overarching policy document for the entire PA system, and all other proposed policy instruments will be derived from it. The PA Zoning Plan is aimed at critical sites and will be a comprehensive plan that will contain policy guidance on socio-economic development and conservation priorities within the system. It may be prepared earlier, given the urgency of dealing with zoning issues in critical sites. The National PA Strategy will outline the strategic path within which the PA System is to evolve and mature, and will touch upon all of the key governance framework aspects (policy, legal, institutional and financial aspects included). In order to embark and stay on this path, the Strategy will outline which areas of capacity need to be strengthened and how. The Strategy will be in line with wider policy instruments (such as the PANA II) and is expected to undergo a wide consultation and validation process. The National PA strategy will aim (i) to guide a long-term expansion plan (including strategies to control and/or mitigate climate change impacts on PAs and to incorporate climate change into the long-term PA strategy), and (ii) to identify strategies for replicating project activities to other PAs. As a climate change adaptation measure, plans contained in the strategy may include the establishment of biological corridors in terrestrial areas and sustainable management of forests bordering terrestrial PA units. Furthermore, a clear policy framework will be established to allow for the expansion and consolidation of the PA system, including decrees to create and/or revise categorization of selected PAs, to allow for PA zoning for productive uses (e.g. artisanal fishing, tourism development), to regulate private land-tenure within PAs, and to enable civil society actors (local communities, NGOs) to participate in PA selection and creation processes. The National PA Business Plan will focus on the system level and will shed light into how the PAAA can be strengthened from a financial point of view. It will also focus on how it can leverage resources and strengthen partnerships, while taking into consideration both the cost and revenue sides of the PA management equation, and using consolidated financial planning and accounting and revenue-generating strategies**.**

*Output 1.3 The new PAAA is cooperating effectively with relevant institutions for sustainable resource management*

Although the plans endorsed by the government point to an autonomous authority, the new PAAA cannot fulfil its mandate in isolation and will have to develop ways of working with several sectors for achieving conservation goals, including *inter alia* fisheries, tourism and marine transport departments, NGOs, local authorities and communities. The aim is to develop the necessary collaborative frameworks that will allow this to take place (e.g. from the more formal concessions, sub-contracts, memoranda of understanding or agreement, to the more informal partnerships for collaboration at the local level).

*Output 1.4 Quantitative data on climate change and carbon sequestration is effectively informing the design and implementation of the National PA strategy*

Cape Verde is in the process of obtaining approval for a new Climate Change Adaptation Project under the Least Developed Countries’ Fund (LDCF), where relevant knowledge and tools for assessing climate risks will be developed. Although the Adaptation project does not focus on biodiversity, the potential for collaboration exists in terms of extending climate risk analysis to the interface climate change-biodiversity. This will be explored, as will the nature-based adaptation potential that can be generated from enhanced knowledge of the carbon fluxes in the natural environments in Cape Verde, including both the terrestrial and marine biomes.[[36]](#footnote-37) The goal of the study is to mainstream climate change considerations into PA planning and management, including opportunities to leverage additional funding for it on the basis of this knowledge.

**Outcome 2) Management effectiveness at selected terrestrial and marine PAs is enhanced**

1. Under Outcome 2, the project will make operational four terrestrial Natural Parks (on Fogo, São Vicente and Santo Antão) and three MPAs (on Sal and Boavista), extending PA management to five islands that have not previously benefited from a GEF intervention targeting PAs (refer to for an overview of the sites). The three MPAs will consolidate nine pre-existing gazetted sites, and will aslo expand the originally gazetted area by 41,214 ha. In addition, improved coverage and support will be provided to twelve MPAs on Sal and Boavista (including the three new ones that will be directly targeted) by establishing two Island-Wide PA Offices. While the seven target sites will count on more intensified and direct PA operationalisation activities (in particular management planning and implementation, and the piloting of surveillance and ecological monitoring mechanisms, among other relevant activities), the MPAs covered by the Island-Wide PA Offices will benefit from a more indirect form of operationalisation, e.g. the development and implementation of Island-Wide Conservation Strategy Plans for the entire island. It is also likely that some of the MPAs supported by an Island-Wide Office will come under a concession agreement with NGOs or other partners, meaning the Offices will be able not only to provide technical assistance services to supervise these agreements, but also to create synergies between projects and be a focal point for the concerted management of all MPAs on the two islands and the application of Integrated Coastal Zone Management (ICZM) approaches, given the co-dependent relationship between the terrestrial and marine ecosystems on the islands.[[37]](#footnote-38)
2. **The expected conservation outcome under Outcome 2** is improved conservation of marine/coastal and terrestrial biodiversity in 48% of the terrestrial sub-set of the PA system and in 83% of the expanded MPA system, which together represents 73,072 ha of biodiversity rich land and seascape in Cape Verde. This will be primarily assessed against the baseline, as follows: *(i)* Expansion of the MPA sub-set of the PA estate through consolidation of smaller areas and expansion into the sea for fisheries’ stock protection (representing 27,754 ha of additional area in reconfiguration of MPA borders on two Islands, Sal and Boavista); (ii) Improved PA management effectiveness in 4 PAs and 3 consolidated MPAs, measured by a 15% increase in METT scores; (ii) Improved indicators for selected taxa show better ecosystem management (including endemic plants and endangered marine fauna, t.b.d.); % of relevant community representatives, private land owners and tourism operators who endorse the applicable PA/MPA management and business plans and Island-Wide Conservation Strategy Plans.
3. The outputs necessary to achieve this outcome are described below.

*Output 2.1 Management and business plans have been prepared and implemented in a participatory fashion in 4 terrestrial PAs and in 3 MPAs involving communities, private land owners and tourism operators, among others*

As key instruments for PA operationalisation, the Management and Business Plansfor each of the sites will establish permitted land/sea uses and management structures in view of the areas’ conservation functions and local context. They will also establish the basis for the realization of the economic potential of the PAs/MPAs. Staff at the two terrestrial PA Site Management Units and the two Island-Wide Offices will receive training in visitor services, landscape zoning, monitoring and enforcement, financial management, etc. with the aim of providing quality support to the implementation of the plans.

*Output 2.2 Island-Wide Conservation Strategy Plans have been implemented and are supporting the establishment of all of the MPAs on Sal and Boavista Islands*

The aim of conceiving, validating and implementing Island-Wide Conservation Strategy Plans is to put into practice through the policy guidance being generated at the central level, with an island-specific focus. Its aim is also to initiate MPA operationalisation covering a large number of areas through a comprehensive and cost-effective approach.[[38]](#footnote-39) In the development of the Island-Wide Plans, an ICZM approach will be widely applied to ensure that all of the elements from both the land and sea-based environments are taken into consideration. Experience from the PRCM and elsewhere will be drawn upon.

*Output 2.3 Ecological monitoring systems are in place for the seven target PAs/MPAs, yielding relevant data on the health of ecosystems*

Given the fragility of both terrestrial and marine ecosystems, it is essential to establish thresholds for the use of biodiversity within the PAs/MPAs that ensure that these thresholds are incorporated into the areas’ management plans ( further down makes some proposals with respect to the use of species’ indicators such as ‘carrying capacity’, ‘sustainable resource yield’ and ‘thresholds of potential concern’). The initial work under this output includes activities aimed at defining which species and relevant ecological data, including data that is necessary for monitoring the projects’ indicators, will be collected and analysed. The establishment of the system may also rely on secondary data produced by research institutions and the collaboration from interested scientists from Cape Verde and elsewhere.

*Output 2.4 Exotic species are under management and IAS are under sustained control in target terrestrial PAs*

While the Phase I Project had positive experiences with the fight against IAS in terrestrial PAs, this experience needs to be brought to another level (wider coverage) and a more varied set of methods needs to be tested, costed and evaluated. Also, collaboration with other government bodies, in particular the DGASP, as well as the pursuit for sustained funding for fighting IAS, will be necessary to achieve progress in this area.

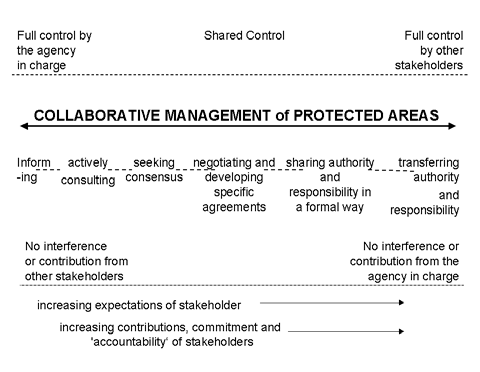
*Output 2.5 A Fisheries Management Plan is under implementation, as a result of cooperation agreements between the Directorate of Fisheries and the Island-Wide Office, at all MPA sites*

Another important task for the Island-Wide Office will be to forge a partnership with the Directorate of Fisheries (and other relevant bodies for fisheries’ control) in order to ensure compliance with MPA management plans with respect to use rights and restrictions for fisheries’ resources within MPAs.

**Outcome 3) The sustainability of PAs is strengthened through community mobilization, sectoral engagement and local capacity building for sustainable resource management within PAs/MPAs and adjacent areas**

1. Under Outcome 3, the project will ensure the sustainability of all efforts towards a consolidated, expanded and more effective PA System in Cape Verde. This will be sought primarily through the buy-in of resource and land users with respect to the presence and increased operationalisation of PAs/MPAs. Both terrestrial PAs and MPAs in Cape Verde are impacted by the activities of communities living within and around their boundaries, as well as by other economic actors and decision-makers. As a result, the effective and sustainable management of PAs will only be possible through the active mobilisation and engagement of these stakeholders.
2. The essence of efforts towards PA/MPA sustainability under this outcome is to ensure that the establishment of the areas and the implementation of their management plans are not carried out in a ‘stakeholder vacuum’. Instead, resource users will be implicated in the development of the plans and in their monitoring through appropriate fora. On the one hand, enforcement and regulation are necessary for ensuring compliance with the resource use thresholds contained in the management plans. Some of these measures are already built in Outputs 2.1 and 2.2. Under this outcome, enforcement efforts will be strengthened through the integration of PA/MPA management into local development frameworks (e.g. island-wide sectoral plans derived from national sectoral plans, land use and urbanisation plans etc.). This is particularly important, as several economic activities that promote development also pose threats to biodiversity. On the other hand, under ideal conditions, participatory approaches towards conservation have been shown to reduce in the long-term the costs and increase the overall effectiveness of compliance with management plans (see for an indicative reference to such approaches and their implications). For poor rural communities living in adjacent areas to PAs and artisanal fishermen, project activities will focus on the development of biodiversity friendly / alternative livelihoods income-generating activities as an effective means of participating in the conservation efforts. The plans for income-generating activities will also be part and parcel of the PA business planning foreseen under Output 2.1. Cape Verde has in fact had first-hand experience with the implementation of biodiversity-friendly activities through the Protected Areas’ Phase I project. Lessons from the project’s recent final evaluation have directly informed the design of activities under this component.[[39]](#footnote-40) Strategic planning of micro-granting activities and tighter monitoring of such activities will be catered for by “piggy-backing” on the SGP roll-out in Cape Verde. In addition, the project will foster the establishment of concertation fora (PA management councils) for ensuring that the concerns of all relevant stakeholders at the local level are taken into account in PA/MPA development.
3. It is worth noting that GEF support is complementary and incremental with respect to the co-financing and other parallel funding (including the GEF’s Small Grants Programme). Activities were planned considering that the government and other partners are already supporting adjacent communities in several PAs and MPAs, such as (i) the rural development program in and around Chã das Caldeiras NR on Fogo Island which is funded by KfW[[40]](#footnote-41); and (ii) the nascent EU’s programme on Sal Island for MPA management and the government’s financing of rural/coastal communities on target sites and islands. Furthermore, as the project develops, the UN System will also plan and implement developmental interventions with those communities as means of additionally supporting this component of the project. GEF support under this project will ensure that participation, sustainability and biodiversity conservation are integral parts of a set of initiatives in the targeted areas; initiatives that will be thoroughly surveyed and engaged with during the inception and post-inception phase of the project.
4. **The expected conservation outcome under Outcome 3** is that of reduced pressure on sensitive ecosystems from adjacent communities in four target terrestrial PAs and three MPAs This will be achieved as communities and sectoral representative swap biodiversity-degrading activities for biodiversity-friendly ones and help conserve sites together with other local stakeholders. This will be assessed against the baseline with respect to the level of compliance with resource and land uses’ threshold limits, as established in the management plans for 4 terrestrial PAs and 3 MPAs (in particular with respect to fuel-wood collection, agriculture, tourism, fisheries, real-estate developments).

Figure 2. Gradients in the Levels of Participation in PA Management



Source: Adapted from Borrini-Feyerabend 1996, Pimbert & Pretty 1997), In Elke Mannigel (2002): “*Participatory solution of land use conflicts in protected area management in the Brazilian Atlantic Forest*”, presented at the Conference on International Agricultural Research for Development, Deutscher Tropentag 2002.

1. The outputs necessary to achieve this outcome are described below.

*Output 3.1 Organized communities, farmer associations, and associations of artisanal fishermen have the capacity to engage in biodiversity friendly income-generating activities as an alternative to resource degrading ones*

This output will be developed in close collaboration with the on-going Small Grants Programme in Cape Verde, as well as with existing micro-credit schemes in relevant project sites. Currently, the SGP is in the process of analysing a series of >80 proposals from CBOs from all over the country to select the first batch of 22-23 small projects to approved. The governance structures of the SGP are established and will be used for the purpose of approving, rolling-out and monitoring a specific sub-programme of micro-grants to communities in the areas adjacent to the project’s PAs and MPAs with the aim of developing biodiversity friendly income-generating activities. These areas are: (1) MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island; (2) MPA Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island; (3) Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista, Boavista Island; (4) Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park, Fogo Island; (4) Monte Verde Natural Park, São Vicente Island; (5) Morroços Natural Park, Santo Antão; and (6) Cova, Paúl and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park, Santo Antão. Project funds will also be used for building the capacity of local associations in these areas (in particular farmers, fishermen and women) and for fostering the establishment of new CBOs where none exist. Training will be carried out by experienced environmental NGOs. A limited call for proposals to potential NGO partners will be launched for the purpose of CBO capacity building and training on the basis of adequate TOR to be developed by the project team, once it is in place. The micro-grant programme will be launched on the project’s year 2, in line with recommendations from evaluation of the previous GEF PA project, notably that such activities started somewhat late and need time for consolidation. A budget allocation of $120,000 has been set aside for micro-grants. Based on the SGP experience in Cape Verde, this should be sufficient for approving a first batch of 6-8 small projects. In addition, the project team and partners will approach bilateral and multilateral donors in due course for mobilising additional finance for extending the micro-grant programme to more CBOs and for a longer period of time.

*Output 3.2 Local governments, resource institutions, private operators, NGOs and others participate actively and collaboratively in biodiversity conservation in PAs and MPAs through the established Advisory Councils for the project’s target PAs and MPAs*

In line with article 22 of Decree-Law 3/2003 on Protected Areas, the establishment of PA Advisory Councils for each island or for each PA is intended to facilitate PA management through a participatory approach with all stakeholders. Yet, experiences in Cape Verde are very incipient on that matter.[[41]](#footnote-42) The project team will decide upon inception if Councils will be established for each of the PAs of under an Island-Wide approach for Sal and Boavista for example. Appropriate TOR will be developed for the purpose and the project will sustain the costs of holding PA Advisory Council meetings, until a more sustainable mechanism for financing them can be established. Relevant stakeholders will include communities, farmer associations, and associations of artisanal fishermen, local government, investors (e.g. real-estate developers, tourism operators) and local NGOs. It is expected that these fora will allow for relevant discussions that pertain to the PAs/MPAs to be held and conflicts to be resolved. The meetings will also have an information sharing function, so that the project can update and involve communities in the implementation process and receive advice from stakeholders on it. These meetings will have a local character and will not substitute the high-level, project board function of the Project Steering Committee (PSC). Yet some members of the PA Advisory Councils may be represented in the PSC.

*Output 3.3 The integration of PA/MPA planning and strategizing into local development frameworks ensure that sectoral development at the local level is more harmonious with the conservation objectives and activities of PAs and MPAs*

This output will complement the policy development outputs under Outcome 1, but will be aimed at the local level. The approach is one of mainstreaming biodiversity concerns into relevant planning and strategic frameworks relevant to the local/site level. With respect to the environment sector, two types of plans derived from the PANA II guide the activities DGA at the local level: the Municipal Environmental Plans and the Sectoral PANA. These are periodically revised. Other sectors also prepare and roll-out plans that affect local development and can have an impact on biodiversity, notably sectoral and local plans for land-use planning, water, agriculture, forestry, livestock, fisheries and tourism/real-estate development. The project will engage at the technical level with local authorities on Boavista, Sal, Santo Antão, Fogo and São Vicente and provide support for a stronger integration of PA/MPA planning and strategizing into these plans, both respect to their conception, implementation, review and redesign.

### Project Indicators

1. The project indicators contained in Section II / Part II (Strategic Results Framework) include only impact (or ‘objective’) indicators and outcome (or ‘performance’) indicators. They are all SMART[[42]](#footnote-43). The project may, however, need to develop a certain number of process-oriented indicators to compose the ‘M&E framework’ at the site level. This site-level M&E framework will help adjust PA management plans and determine the ecosystem’s status. These indicators will also be integrated into the project’s overall M&E framework. It is envisaged that the project’s overall M&E framework will build on UNDP’s existing M&E Framework for GEF programming.
2. The organization of the logframe is based on the general assumption that: (i) *if* institutional leadership and responsibility for PA management is clearly and legally defined and endowed with sufficient financial means; (ii) *if* PA management can successfully apply a participatory approach; (iii) *and if* communities are engaged in natural resource and conservation management; *then* Cape Verde’s protected areas (PAs) system will be consolidated and strengthened, and in turn globally significant biodiversity will be conserved. This logic is based on the barrier and root-cause analysis carried out during the PPG phase (refer to Section I, Part I, chapter ‘’). In turn, the choice of indicators was based on two key criteria: (i) their pertinence to the above assumption; and (ii) the feasibility of obtaining / producing and updating the data necessary to monitor and evaluate the project through these indicators. The project’s key indicators are as follows:

Table 5. Overview of Project Indicators

| **Indicator** | **Target by Project End** |
| --- | --- |
| **At objective level: To consolidate and strengthen Cape Verde’s protected areas (PA) System through the establishment of new terrestrial and marine PA units and the promotion of participatory approaches to conservation.** | |
| 1. The overall level of the PA System that is operational increases from a baseline of 3,700 ha or 6% of the gazetted PA/MPA estate as result of the project | As a cumulative GEF investment in Cape Verde, 76,772 ha or 73% of the PA/MPA expanded estate are operational, as independently verified by project evaluators |
| 1. Average sea turtle emergences in specific areas (t.b.d) within the three target MPA sites for the project (Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Ponta do Sinó, and Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista) | Target values t.b.d by specialists upon project inception |
| 1. Rate of native/endemic species vegetative growth versus IAS cover in specific areas of target terrestrial PA sites for the project | Target values t.b.d by specialists upon project inception |
| **At outcome 1 level – Governance framework for the expansion, consolidation and sustainability of the National PA system is strengthened** | |
| 1. Increased scores on the UNDP’s Financial Sustainability Scorecard for National Systems of Protected Areas over the baseline ratio of 17%   *Refer to and for respectively for summarised and detailed scores with respect to the various components and elements of the Scorecard* | Scores, expressed in absolute terms, increase by at least 40% |
| 1. Increased scores on the UNDP’s Capacity Development Scorecard for of Protected Areas Management over the baseline average ratio of 37%   *Refer to for summarised and detailed scores with respect to Strategic Areas of Support and the Capacity Levels of the Scorecard.* | Scores, expressed in absolute terms, increase by at least 20% |
| **At outcome 2 level – Management effectiveness at selected terrestrial and coastal/marine PAs is enhanced** | |
| 1. Increased scores on the GEF4’s PA Management Effectiveness Tracking Tool “METT” for all seven target sites:   [1] MPA S. Negra/C. da Fragata 15  [2] MPA P do Sinó 15  [3] PM do Leste de Boavista 18  [4] Chã das Caldeiras NP 61  [5] Monte Verde NP 13  [6] Morroços NP 15  [7] Cova/Paúl/R da Torre NP 15  *Refer to for the complete METT.* | Scores, expressed in absolute terms, increase by at least 30% |
| 1. Expansion of the MPA sub-set of the PA estate through the consolidation of smaller areas and an expansion into the sea for fisheries’ stock protection (representing 27,754 ha of additional area in reconfiguration of the MPA boundaries on two Islands, Sal and Boavista) | MPAs effectively established with confirmed hectarage and boundaries:   * MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island * MPA do Sinó, Sal Island * Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista |
| 1. The enforcement of PA Zoning Plans for critical PAs is effective, as measured by the annual number of infractions reported on each site | To be defined once Plans are in force and a monitoring system for infractions is in place |
| **At outcome 3 level – The sustainability of PAs is strengthened through community mobilization, sectoral engagement and local capacity building for sustainable resource management within PAs/MPAs and adjacent areas** | |
| 1. Level of compliance with resource and land uses’ threshold limits established in the management plans for 4 terrestrial PAs and 3 MPAs (in particular with respect to fuel-wood collection, agriculture, tourism, fisheries, real-estate developments) (See .) | There is general compliance with threshold limits defined in PA/MPA management plans, as assessed independently through the project’s mid-term and final evaluations. |

|  |
| --- |
| Box 3. Defining Thresholds for Resource and Land Use |
| **Indicators such as ‘carrying capacity’, ‘sustainable resource yield’ and ‘thresholds of potential concern’ will be adopted, where applicable, in the PA/MPA management plans.**   * Their definition is largely linked to the identified direct threats to Cape Verde’s biodiversity (see PRODOC Section I, Part I, ‘Threats, Root causes and Impacts’). These indicators will assist in asserting compliance with and effectiveness of PA/MPA management plans * The project will define an appropriate ‘**carrying capacity**’ for tourism and real-estate developments in coastal areas where MPAs are proposed, given the ecological sensitivity of these habitats. Carrying capacity also applies for livestock in areas adjacent to the proposed terrestrial PAs, as grazing has been identified as a threat to the indigenous vegetation that is sought protected in PAs on Fogo, São Vicente and Santo Antão. (See more on this below) * Other indicators will also assist in and the appropriate definition of thresholds, in particular: *(i)* ‘**sustainable resource yield**’ for activities, such as artisanal fisheries and the extraction of medicinal plants, both of which are bound to take place within established MPAs and PAs respectively, but in a rather controlled manner; and *(ii)* ‘**thresholds of potential concern**’ for e.g. threatened species that are being closely monitored (where minimum thresholds are important) or for species that play a key role in the food chain in a given habitat (where both minimum and maximum thresholds are relevant). |
| **Fisheries and Other Marine Biological Resources:** with focus on certain key species under stress, and upon which the MPA gazettal is expected to have a positive impact, the project will define, as applicable, ‘sustainable resource yield’ and ‘thresholds of potential concern’. These will be adopted as a management instrument/indicator in the MPAs’ management plan and will be calculated on the basis of stock estimates, fishing effort and effective off-take. The National Institute for Fishery Development (INDP) and/or Cape Verde’s University are already collecting fisheries’ data and may be called upon to assist. To the extent possible, the estimates should apply for the entire islands of Sal and Boavista, in order to monitor the risk of displaced fisheries as a possible negative consequence of MPA creation. Conservation objectives and permitted uses will be defined for each of the targeted MPAs in their respective management plans. The plans will also propose the permitted off-take for specific species and zones within the MPA. For certain species, the off-take may be set as zero (e.g. marine turtles), but where other types may apply, such minimal threshold of potential concern. Baselines studies were not sufficiently specific to allow for the definition of sustainable yield estimates. These studies did point out however to Cape Verde’s fishing resources being generally under-exploited, but they also pointed out to certain species of lobster being overfished locally (seeparagraph and footnote ). Finally, it important to bear in mind that MPAs will be established in Cape Verde for the conservation of *(i)* certain fish stocks, particularly near-shore, pelagics and demersals; *(ii)* coral reefs and their trophic chains; and *(iii)* coastal habitats and associated species (e.g. marine turtles, seabirds). The protection of highly migratory species within the EEZ (such tuna) and of other species being commercially targeted in the areas beyond the fisheries’ protection zone may require other measures beyond the creation of the proposed MPAs in Cape Verde. Those would be outside the scope of the current project. |
| **Livestock:** The concept of ‘carrying capacity’ for livestock, expressed in number of heads per hectare, is widely used in the relevant literature and the indicator has been estimated by MADRRM in different studies for areas where extensive grazing takes place in Cape Verde. It is a measure of the population size of for different livestock species that the environment can sustain indefinitely, given the food, habitat, water and other necessities available. With respect to terrestrial PAs, baseline studies pointed out to extensive grazing posing a threat to indigenous species, some of which are endemic and hence under more severe threat. They recommended that the activity be forbidden within the PAs and controlled in the adjacent areas, given the conservation support function of PA buffer zones. One solution that worked well in the Phase I project was the use micro-grants for turning livestock rearing into an intensive activity, serving both the purpose of income generation and easing of threats to landscapes. This will be adequately reflected in the PAs’ management and business plans. Livestock carrying capacity in PA buffer zones will likely be set lower than for the rest of the island in question. |
| **Tourism and Real-Estate Developments:** The national tourism strategy includes rough estimates of (human) carrying capacity and projections of in terms of ‘number of beds’ for each of Cape Verde’s touristic islands (Sal, Boavista and Maio). These developments assume that tourism expansion would be restricted to the designated Integrated Tourism Development Areas, or ZDTI. It is notable however that there are overlaps between gazetted MPAs and ZDTIs (see Project Maps for their locations on Sal and Boavista), a matter that is causing some controversy. Tourism carrying capacity estimates were largely based on available water and available land for the development of real-estate and tourism infrastructures. Yet, these developments have not taken into account the pre-existence of ecological sensitive areas, where massive tourism development could result in habitat destruction and ecosystem degradation (see paragraph ). The aim is to recalculate tourism carrying capacity with due consideration for: *(i)* the negative impacts of tourism on biodiversity; and *(ii)* PA/MPA establishment. |

### Risks and Assumptions

1. The project strategy, described in detail within this project document, makes the following key assumptions[[43]](#footnote-44) in proposing the GEF intervention:

* Baseline conditions in the selected areas can be extrapolated, with a high confidence level, to other PAs and lessons learned can be successfully disseminated.
* Increased awareness and capacity will lead to a change in behaviour with respect to natural resource management and conservation practices
* Sustainable natural resource management will gradually become a national priority for Cape Verde as knowledge and information is made available.

1. During the PPG phase, projects risks were updated from what has been presented at the PIF stage. They were further elaborated and classified according to the UNDP/GEF Risk Standard Categories[[44]](#footnote-45), and assessed according to the criteria of ‘impact’ and ‘likelihood’ ():

Table 6. Elaboration of Risks

| **Identified Risks** | **Category** | **Elaboration** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Political and institutional support for the establishment of PAAA is insufficient | Political | Creating a new PAAA is a bold step that the will require full support within the government, not least also from the Ministry of Finance. |
| Levels of central funding to sustain the consolidation of the PA System may not be sufficient to sustain its long-term functioning | Financial | Currently, funding for PA management is limited to the low levels of funding available from the MADRRM. The current globally-induced recession is already influencing public revenue and expenditure and negatively affecting resource allocation for PA management. PAs have the potential of generating local revenues in order to meet their management expenses. It may still be a while before the funding needs of the PA System are adequately addressed. |
| Tourism levels may increase so rapidly that the ecological functioning of MPAs is impacted | Strategic | Supposing that the world-wide recession will not last very long and that the tourism influx to Cape Verde will increase dramatically. If the MPAs on Sal Island are not sufficiently operational, this increase may result in more permanent damage to the marine environment. |
| Climate Change impacts could reduce ecosystem functioning and threaten biodiversity within protected areas | Environmental | Cape Verde has a climate defined as dry tropical Sahelian, making local terrestrial ecosystems highly vulnerable to climate fluctuations. Coral formations have so far shown themselves to be resilient, and no significant bleaching events have occurred; but this situation might change. Future climate change models run in connection with the Initial National Communication to the UNFCCC and the NAPA suggest that the average temperature in Cape Verde will likely increase up to 2.5 ºC by 2100, while rainfall will likely decrease by 25% within the next 20-30 years, which is quite significant. These estimates must be interpreted cautiously, as better localised modelling is not yet available. Over an even shorter time scale (i.e. 10-20 years), climate change effects on water resources in Cape Verde are predicted to include; (i) increased frequency of seasonal water shortages in some locations; and (ii) increased year round shortages in other locations. In general, climatic variability is predicted to increase, with more storms, floods and droughts, as well as a shorter and more erratic rainy season throughout Cape Verde. These climatic events may gradually begin to affect the country’s biodiversity, but not necessarily within the project’s duration, hence the impact will be low. |
| Fishery sector policy may have adverse impacts on biodiversity if implemented unabated | Strategic | The current sectoral policy for Cape Verde’s proposes expansion of the national fishing effort and the multiplication of licensing to foreign fleets, as a means to increase the country’s income and the State’s revenue. Although the policy does refer to the importance of conserving stocks and creating MPAs, a rapid increase in the use of fisheries resources without safeguards and control may result in collapse. |
| Resource use conflicts may arise if PAs/MPAs do not generate benefits to adjacent communities | Strategic | If alternative livelihoods / biodiversity-friendly income-generating activities do not produce tangible benefits early enough in the project, the interests of PA/MPA adjacent communities’ may be in direct conflict with the areas’ conservation objectives, impacting the project negatively. |

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | Box 4. Risk Assessment Guiding Matrix | | | | | |
|  | **Impact** | | | | | |
| **Likelihood** |  | **Critical** | **High** | **Medium** | **Low** | **Negligible** |
| **Certain / Imminent** | **Critical** | **Critical** | **High** | **Medium** | **Low** |
| **Very Likely** | **Critical** | **High** | **High** | **Medium** | **Low** |
| **Likely** | **High** | **High** | **Medium** | **Low** | **Negligible** |
| **Moderately Likely** | **Medium** | **Medium** | **Low** | **Low** | **Negligible** |
| **Unlikely** | **Low** | **Low** | **Negligible** | **Negligible** | Considered to pose no determinable risk |

Table 7. Project Risks Assessment and Mitigation Measures

| **Identified Risks** | **Impact** | **Likeli­hood** | **Risk Assessment** | **Mitigation Measures** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Political and institutional support for the establishment of the PAAA is insufficient | Medium | Moderately Likely | **Low** | UNDP is already leading a series of consultations for ensuring that the higher echelons of government are sensitised about the importance of the project, but above all taking a bold step to enhance the country’s PA System. These consultations will continue even while approval from the GEF is awaited. UNDP is also collecting information about similar experiences of establishing PA authorities in other countries through its knowledge network ‘ee-net’. When operational, the project itself will carry out targeted studies to establish a road-map for the creation of the PAAA. |
| Levels of central funding to sustain the consolidation of the PA System may not be sufficient to sustain its long-term functioning | High | Moderately Likely | **Medium** | Government co-financing for this project is more than $6 million, although most of it is provided through concurring initiatives and programmes. However, additional in cash co-financing from the government is under negotiation. These new funds will be entrusted to the UNDP for direct subsidisation of the project and will therefore be available for strengthening the PA System. Furthermore, some of the project’s activities (e.g. PA business planning implementation) will focus on improving the revenue side of the PA financing equation. |
| Tourism levels may increase so rapidly that the ecological functioning of the MPAs is impacted | Medium | Moderately Likely | **Low** | The project will undertake assessments of the carrying capacities of the selected PAs/MPAs in order to sustain environmentally-friendly levels of tourism activities, which will help PA planners to allocate tourism development actions to the areas (or to specific areas within MPAs, as real-estate developments will likely target MPAs, rather than terr. PA) that can most effectively absorb increased visitation, and to incorporate ecological criteria into government tourism planning processes. |
| Climate Change impacts could reduce ecosystem functioning and threaten biodiversity within protected areas | Low | Very Likely | **Medium** | The project will integrate adaptive planning and management measures for potential climate change effects, identifying ecosystems The project also will support soil and water conservation measures to lessen the impact of climate change on human communities, thereby reducing potential pressure on natural systems. |
| Fishery sector policy may have adverse impacts on biodiversity if implemented unabated | Low | Moderately Likely | **Low** | Through activities under Component 3, in particular those under output 3.3, and the establishment of thresholds for the use of biodiversity within the PAs/MPAs (see also output 2.5) the project is expected to mitigate this risk for the islands where MPAs are being established. While the creation of MPAs (or fisheries’ exclusion/protection zones) is in line with the long-term strategy of the fisheries’ sector in Cape Verde, implementation of this strategy is not free from issues. Dealing with the threats to biodiversity from productive sectors such as fisheries and tourism will be necessary, if the pressure on biological resources is to be eased, not just within MPAs. However, these are somewhat outside of the scope of the current project. A different / new intervention may be needed to address these issues. In addition, the issue of fisheries is being dealt with in part through an International Waters intervention that that this project will link up to -- FAO's “*Protection of the Canary Current Large Marine Ecosystem - LME*” (refer to PRODOC ). |
| Resource use conflicts may arise if PAs/MPAs do not generate benefits to adjacent communities | High | Moderately Likely | **Medium** | Plans for Output 3.1 (Organized communities, farmer associations, and associations of artisanal fishermen have the capacity to engage in biodiversity friendly income-generating activities as an alternative to resource degrading ones) have been redesigned with the aim of maximising its positive effect of the micro-grant programme. This implied building on the governance structure of the SGP in Cape Verde, starting early, investing GEF resources strategically in capacity building and mobilising more resources for these activities outside the project. |

### Incremental reasoning and expected global, national and local benefits

1. **In the baseline situation**, Cape Verde’s PA system will be limited to two functionally operational terrestrial PA units. The other 18 terrestrial PA units and all of the 27 marine and coastal PA units will remain “paper parks”, and biodiversity at these sites will continue to be severely impacted by unsustainable resource use, land/seascape transformation, and IAS. In addition, the national institutional and policy framework for protected areas will remain incomplete, with PA management consigned to a small unit within the DGA (that is also charged with numerous other duties) and with no integration of the MPAs into the existing management framework.
2. **In the alternative scenario**, systemic and institutional barriers will be removed, enhancing the effectiveness of terrestrial and marine PAs by improving the financial sustainability of the PA System, management capacities, as well as of the monitoring and enforcement regimes. These benefits will extend directly to 4 terrestrial PAs, 3 new consolidated MPAs and indirectly to 9 additional MPAs through the IWOs’ support, thereby increasing the area of coverage benefiting from active PA management and functioning from 3,700 ha to 46,202 ha by the end of the project (i.e. from only 6% of the existing estate to 77% of the expanded one).
3. The most important global benefit resulting from this project will be the conservation of globally significant biodiversity through the protection of the native flora and fauna of Cape Verde. Some of Cape Verde’s most important and unique humid and sub-humid ecosystems will be protected. Several threatened and endangered native flora and fauna, including a total of 12 plant and 18 animal species listed on the Cape Verde Red List, will be protected, their critical habitats will be secured, and sustainable use regimes will be developed within local communities. Finally, strategies and methods for biodiversity conservation, soil and water management, and protected areas management will be assessed and considered for replication in other areas within Cape Verde, as well as internationally. The programme is also expected to generate global and national benefits related to land degradation control and rehabilitation, and the promotion of sustainable livelihoods.
4. A major objective and focus of the proposed project is to ensure the participation of local communities in PAs and in natural resource management in selected PAs. To achieve this objective, existing municipal and community associations (women, fishermen and farmer associations) will be strengthened through capacity building and leadership roles. These associations, together with the Municipality in question and MADRRM delegations at each site, will actively participate in the implementation of project activities. This coordination will improve local associations’ and municipalities’ capacity to: (i) address threats to natural resource management at the local level; (ii) contribute to management decisions with local and national authorities; and (iii) secure the agreement of local communities and municipalities on proposed adaptation measures to PA management. Capacity building is an essential component of the proposed project. Long-term training of national staff will be conducted and aimed at developing the skills necessary for PA management at various levels. Specific targeted training activities will be planned in detail during the implementation phase and will include training activities such as economic/tourism impact evaluation, database maintenance and natural resource models development.
5. Gender issues will be promoted and closely monitored. Due to the nature of traditional activities at the project sites, it is expected that women will play an important role in all project activities, including management, training and the establishment of alternative livelihood related options, enabling them to reach and maintain sustainable levels.

### Cost-effectiveness

1. The project will ensure a cost effective approach to PA management by working with productive sector planners and enterprises (tourism, agriculture, fisheries) and above all with farmers and fishermen that have a vested interest in good stewardship of PAs/MPAs. Experience across the UNDP/GEF portfolio shows that partnerships with communities involved in the management of PAs/MPAs is effective, in terms of the conservation objective being sought and the costs per unit of effort. This is because communities depend on the natural resources for their livelihood and it is in their interest to adopt any measure to improve the ecosystems’ function and services. Through the adopted barrier-removal approach in this project, this partnership will help prevent, reduce and relocate activities before they cause negative impacts on ecosystem functions within PAs/MPAs. Conducting activities to enhance the ecosystem without the participation of key stakeholders would otherwise be costly.
2. An obvious alternative to the project’s protected areas approach would have been to focus on mainstreaming biodiversity considerations into the fisheries sector or the tourism/real estate sector as a means to ensure the conservation/sustainable use of coastal and marine biodiversity. While sectoral engagement is important (the project will address it in a general fashion under Outcome 3), it would have either a limited or a delayed impact on the conservation of critical areas, making such approach less cost-effective for Cape Verde at this stage. This is particularly evident for Sal Island, where experience from the past 5-6 years has shown that the mere gazettal of an MPA is not sufficient to avert threats to coastal and marine biodiversity. The existing areas need to be operationalised or real-estate/tourism developments will not follow due diligence. The advantage of the MPA approach is the ability to implement area-based restrictions, which may apply to both coastal developments and fisheries. This will be done primarily through the formalisation and effective enforcement of the 3 nautical miles fisheries’ protection zone, but also through MPA zoning and the regularisation of land-use on beach areas. The integrated and participatory approach under this project is also timely for the new MPA on Boa Vista Island, where tourism development is projected to grow rapidly over the next 5-10 years. This is opposed to Sal, where mass tourism was chosen as the strategic option many years ago and the potential for expansion is almost saturated. For both islands, the MPA approach is expected to have a positive impact on both artisanal and commercial fisheries. It will equally create opportunities for nature-based tourism, which includes eco-tourism, but is not restricted to it. Within this framework, MPAs are an excellent investment for Cape Verde.
3. An alternative approach was also considered for terrestrial biodiversity, e.g. by restricting terrestrial PAs’ operationalisation activities to the mere eradication of IAS, so that native biodiversity would flourish. However, experience from other islands in the Macaronesian Group of Archipelagos (in particular from the Canary Islands) has shown that, unless the efforts are focused on small islets and are followed by strict control of species’ introduction pathways, it is virtually impossible completely eradicate IAS. Also, data from the GEF/UNDP phase I indicate that substituting IAS for native vegetation may cost as much as $5,000 per hectare. Assuming a conservative infestation rate of 30% in terrestrial PAs, this alternative approach could cost as much as $20 million for the targeted terrestrial sites. While this project will contribute the fight against IAS[[45]](#footnote-46), it will above all identify the cost-effectiveness element in it, and equally a sustainable approach to financing IAS control (rather than eradication). This will be done through community participation in sustaining PAs, which obviously goes beyond the issue of IAS, since there are other threats to the areas. Numerous cases around the world testify the cost effectiveness of community partnership to sustain the environment and, indirectly, reduce poverty.[[46]](#footnote-47)
4. Managing PAs under multiple-use categories that encourage sustainable fishing, agriculture and tourism development in some areas, PA/MPA managers will be able to work with local communities and private sector players to share management responsibilities and costs, including the development sustainable economic activities that benefit these project partners and generate revenue streams for protected areas. This is more cost-effective than enforcing “closed parks” and ignoring local resource users. By establishing island-level financial and business planning and management coordination for MPAs, the project will make efficient use of its funds and avoid duplications of effort, compared to a situation where individual MPAs operate with little coordination or sharing of resources.
5. Synergies with several national and regional programmes, projects and initiatives will equally be sought with a view to increasing the cost-effectiveness of this intervention (refer to Section IV, for an overview).
6. Finally, strengthening the system overall (PAs and MPAs) through one project is more cost-effective than through two separate projects, as had been originally envisaged, given the ability to avoid duplication of effort and the opportunity to consolidate PA/MPA management institutionally.

### Project consistency with national priorities/plans:

1. The project addressed key priorities set out in Cape Verde’s 1999 NBSAP, in particular the creation and consolidation of PA network. Project target sites were chosen, among other criteria, based on the priority ecosystems identified in the NBSAP.
2. At the macro level, the proposed project is in line with Cape Verde’s Grand Options Plan, i.e. Cape Verde’s ‘development master plan’[[47]](#footnote-48), as well as its Growth and Poverty Reduction Strategic Paper (2004-2007), the GPRSP, which provides the reference framework for the intervention of the Government and its partners regarding the formulation and implementation of public policies. The GPRSP sets out five strategic pillars, of which the fourth is “to improve and develop basic infrastructure, promote land use management, and protect the environment”. The Grand Options Plan stresses the importance of ‘safeguarding the environment’ for a healthy economic growth pattern. The conservation of marine and coastal ecosystems is reflected in the VII Government Program (2005-2011), which recognizes marine and coastal resources as strategic components of national economic development.
3. The project is equally in line with the key policies of MADRRM, in particular the National Environment Action Plan (PANA II for 2004 – 2014), where *in situ* conservation of biodiversity through Cape Verde’s PA network is a key element in it. The Programme specifically recognizes the operational management of the four-targeted terrestrial PAs as a cornerstone in the development of the national system of protected areas, and recognizes the conservation of maritime resources as a key priority for the sustainable development of the country. Another key MADRRM policy, to which the project is aligned, is the National Strategy for the Development of Agriculture and Fisheries, which covers the period ending in 2015 and its Action Plan 2009-2011, which proposes environmentally sound practices for both sectors.
4. The project is supportive of Cape Verde’s general decentralisation policy to the extent that the project strategy specifically includes capacity building activities targeted to the local level.
5. The proposed project is in line with and supportive of several donor investments, programmes, projects and initiatives, which either compose the baseline of the project or serve as co-financing to it (see ). It is fully consistent with the UN and UNDP cooperation programmes and frameworks. Cape Verde is the first country in the world to implement the ‘One UN’ approach, and the present United Nations Development Assistance Framework (UNDAF, 2008-2012) has been prepared in that context and, to be implemented jointly by all UN agencies. The protection of the environment is one of the priority themes in the UNDAF. Within this theme, the implementation of NAPA-identified activities is a stated priority.

### Country Ownership: Country Eligibility and Country Drivenness

1. **Country eligibility** Cape Verde has ratified all three Conventions related to the Environment (Biodiversity, Climate Change and Desertification), and has elaborated its Strategic Plans relating to these conventions. Cape Verde signed the Convention on Biodiversity in June 1992 and ratified it in March 1995. Cape Verde is eligible for technical assistance from UNDP.
2. **Country Drivenness** Cape Verde’s PANA II strategic document considers the conservation of biodiversity as a priority activity in natural resource management and sustainable development objectives. It explicitly supports the *in situ* conservation of biodiversity as a central priority, as well as forestry conservation, ecotourism development, and the production of medicines based on native plant and animal species. The strengthening of PAs for biodiversity conservation, and for cultural, tourism, and research objectives, is also called for in the PANA II. Furthermore, it identifies the education of the general Capeverdean population on environmental problems and opportunities as a national priority. The proposed programme, with its focus on terrestrial and marine biodiversity, will also complement other current projects (DGA, Natura 2000, DGASP) that exist for the conservation and development of PAs for terrestrial, marine and coastal ecosystems.
3. Cape Verde is now in the process of implementing its National Action Plan on the Environment and integrating it into its development planning process. Cape Verde has also ratified 14 international agreements related to the protection of the environment (pollution, desertification, conservation of species, etc.). Cape Verde is a participating member of the CILSS (*Comité Inter-Etats pour la Lutte contre la Secheresse au Sahel*), whose objective is to fight the consequences of drought in the Sahel through measures such as natural resource conservation projects, sustainable management of hydrologic resources, and scientific and technical cooperation. The country also signed the following conventions: the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea, the Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage, the Basel Convention on the Control of Trans-boundary Movements of Hazardous Wastes, the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, the Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer, and the Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer.
4. Finally, Cape Verde’s NBSAP identifies *in situ* conservation of biodiversity as a priority for the implementation of the Convention on Biologial Diversity through the creation of the country’s PA network.

### Sustainability and Replicability

1. The project has strong government support at both the central and local levels. The project will contribute to Cape Verde’s Environment priorities by incorporating natural resource and PA management into national development policies. This project will effectively mainstream PA management into relevant ‘governance frameworks’ for natural resource management and related sectors (i.e. policies, programmes, legal frameworks, initiatives etc.), thus ensuring the sustainability of the intervention.
2. The long-term viability and sustainability of the project will depend greatly on institutionalising the capacity built by the project. All capacity building activities anticipated in the project are expected to have long term impact, either at the local level or at the national level. For example, the training components will be planned based on needs assessments. It will equally build on the ‘multiplier-effect’ of training trainers. At the local level, the project will be associated with local NGOs and community’ organisations. Along the same line of ensuring the project’s sustainability, a strategy for site-level interventions will be developed as follows:

(i) Environmental sustainability: all PAs being established and/or strengthened under the project will help to ensure the environmental sustainability of Cape Verde’s terrestrial and marine ecosystems. This sustainability includes forestry plans, land use agreements, resource extraction regulations, coastal fisheries management plans, and PA zoning. Finally, reduced impacts on terrestrial and marine areas from other marine- and land-based activities will provide an additional support to environmental sustainability;

(ii) Financial sustainability: A baseline level of financial sustainability for PAs has been estimated during the preparation of the present document using UNDP’s Financial Sustainability Scorecard for National PA Systems (Annex 4). The highest score achieved on the Scorecard was under Component 1 (*Legal, regulatory and institutional frameworks*) with 30%, while Component 2 (Business planning and tools for cost-effective management) and Component 3 (Tools for revenue generation) scored 7% and 11% respectively. The project’s Outcome 2 has been designed to improve governance frameworks for PA management, as well as to deal with issues of financial sustainability. Several project outputs are aimed at increasing each of these elements of financial sustainability. Under the alternative scenario, the proposed PAAA will have the institutional and financial tools necessary to identify and implement a range of affordable and sustainable financing options and mechanisms for funding PA planning and management. In addition, it is estimated that the PAs percentage of self-funded revenues will rise from 10% under the baseline to 25% under the alternative scenario;

(iii) Institutional sustainability: The MADRRM is fully engaged and committed to the process of PA management and expansion in Cape Verde. Efforts to raise MADRRM ‘s human and institutional capacities will help to ensure that follow-up efforts are undertaken in a professional and cost effective manner. The MADRRM is equally committed to establishing the PAAA, thereby ensuring institutional and financial long-term sustainability for PA management.

1. Replicability. The proposed project’s activities have high potential for replication. In particular, PA management plans development, conservation activities, participatory natural resource management, eco-tourism analysis and pilot activities can all be replicated in other Cape Verde PAs. Furthermore, the replication potential of these project activities will be ensured by the PAAA, as it will be responsible for disseminating lessons learned and for beginning to consolidate the PAs in Cape Verde.

## PART III: Management Arrangements

### Execution Arrangements

1. The project will be implemented by the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP), under its National Execution (NEX) modality and Harmonized Approach to Cash Transfer (HACT) procedures, over a period of four years, from the date of PRODOC signature (indicatively in November/December 2009) to 30 December 2013. The lead executing agency will be the General Directorate for Environment (DGA), which is institutionally linked to MADRRM, until the PAAA is effectively created and arrangements can be made for the transfer of execution responsibilities to the new authority.
2. DGA will establish collaboration agreements with key institutions, organisations and individuals that can play a key role in the implementation of the project, as defined within this project document. These may be at the local, national or international level, all according to UNDP procedures.
3. The project will receive policy guidance and oversight from a Project Steering Committee (PSC), which will be chaired, by default, by either the Director General (DG) for the Environment, or by someone duly designated by the DG; or by the UNDP Resident Coordinator (RC), or by someone duly designated by the RC. The project’s National Project Coordinator (NPC) will function as secretary to the PSC. Members of the PSC will include not only DGA and UNDP representatives (including UNDP’s Environment and Energy Group) but also any other institution (national or local), organisation or partner that has a financial stake in the project. Project co-financiers will be by default invited into the PSC. The PSC is responsible for making management decisions, preferably on a consensus basis, including approving project work plans and budgetary and substantive revisions. Project assurance reviews will be made by this group at designated decision points throughout the course of the project, or as necessary when raised by the NPC through the chair.

1. The NPC will be responsible for the outputs being delivered by the respective agencies on time, on scope and on budget, as well as for the application of all UNDP administrative and financial procedures, and for the efficient use of funding from UNDP-GEF. The NPC will be supported by a project support team and a technical advisory team. The Project Management Unit (PMU) will be housed in the DGA office (Praia, Santiago Island) in order to reduce transaction costs and to build synergy and linkages with other relevant programmes at the national level. The PMU will consist of the NPC, an administrative/finance assistant (also in charge of liaising with DGA and UNDP on HR issues), an assistant and a driver. In addition, the PMU will count on a core of technical staff (including consultants, both national and international), who will hold contracts of varying duration and who will support the NPC with substantive implementation, as indicatively defined under ‘Section IV - ’.
2. Technical support to the PMU and to the PSC (in its deliberations on technical project issues) will be provided by the Technical Advisory Committee (TAC). This committee will indicatively meet two-three times on a yearly basis to review progress towards project objectives, and to provide technical coordination with other on-going relevant and complementary development programs and projects in Cape Verde. The TAC will review all TORs for sub-contracts and assist in monitoring long-term training interventions. When feasible, the TAC will also conduct field visits to project sites. The TAC may consist of representatives from DGA, DGASP, DGT, INIDA, ANMCV (National Municipal Association), International Cooperation, UNDP, Platform of NGOs (a national umbrella organisation for environmental NGOs), other international partners, and a Municipal Representative. The definite composition of the TAC will be proposed upon project inception. DGA and UNDP will alternate as the chair of the TAC.
3. Technical support to the PSC, PMU and TAC will also be given by a GEF Chief Technical Advisor (CTA). The CTA will be an expert in monitoring and evaluation, with demonstrated GEF experience and should preferably have technical expertise in the area of natural resource management, biodiversity conservation, protected areas and environmental management in general. The CTA will provide technical guidance to the NPC, project staff and other government counterparts in the areas of project management and planning, management of site activities, monitoring, and impact assessment. The CTA will assist with compiling lessons learned and sharing experiences internationally. Finally, the CTA will help coordinating the work of all consultants and sub-contractors, ensuring technical quality, timely delivery of expected outputs, and effective synergy among the various activities. The NPC will collaborate with other key development partners such as Austria, France, Spain and the European Commission, to support a coherent and synergetic approach to natural resource management in Cape Verde.
4. In order to accord proper acknowledgement to the UNDP-GEF for providing funding, a GEF logo should appear on all relevant GEF project publications, including among others, project hardware and vehicles purchased with UNDP-GEF funds. Any citation on publications regarding projects funded by UNDP-GEF should also accord proper acknowledgment to GEF. The [UNDP logo](http://intra.undp.org/gef/programmingmanual/undp_logo_page.htm) should be equally prominent—and separated from the [GEF logo](http://intra.undp.org/gef/programmingmanual/gef_logo_page.htm) if possible, as UN visibility is important for security purposes.

### Implementation Arrangements

1. A pivotal objective of the proposed project is to ensure the participation of local communities and other stakeholders (e.g. the tourism/real estate industry) in PA management and in natural resource management in selected PAs. To this end, Municipal Councils and existing community associations, women’s, fishermen’s and farmers’ associations, as well as tourism/real estate industry representatives (preferably organised in associations), will be strengthened in their capacity to deal with PA issues. These associations, together with the Municipality in question and MADRRM/DGA delegations at each site, will actively participate in the implementation of project activities. This coordination will improve local associations and municipalities’ capacity to; (i) manage PAs at the local level; (ii) participate in natural resource management decisions with local and national authorities; and (iii)undertake the agreement of local communities and municipalities on proposed interventions in PAs/MPAs.
2. Training is also an essential component of the proposed project. Long-term training of national staff will be carried out and will be aimed at developing PA management capacity. Specific targeted training activities will be planned in detail during the implementation phase and will include training activities such as PA zone management, environmental M&E, database maintenance and economic analysis of natural resources.
3. Gender issues will be promoted and closely monitored. Due to the nature of traditional activities at the project sites, it is expected that women will play an important role in all project activities, including management, training and establishment of alternative livelihood related options, enabling them to reach and maintain sustainable levels.
4. An inception workshop will be held, preferably within 3 months (but not more than 6 months) to ensure an effective project start up. This workshop will serve; (i) to inform all stakeholders of the project’s inception; (ii) to familiarize stakeholders with project outputs and goals; (iii) to refine the SRF indicators and the selected outputs and activities; (iv) to develop an M&E framework specific to site-level activities and (v) to finalize TORs for the Steering Committee, subcontracts, other project consultants and long term training.
5. Due to the role of WWF Cape Verde in supporting MPA operationalisation in the country, but also due to their links to PRCM and the strong cadre of conservation-oriented technical staff housed by the organisation at the national, regional and global levels, WWF will be invited to prepare a proposal for strengthening the technical teams of the Island-Wide Offices on Sal and Boavista Islands throughout the duration of the project. This will be preceded by the preparations of comprehensive TORs by the project’s CTA and NPC. Besides WWF Cape Verde’s comparative advantage to provide specialised support services to the IWOs, this modality is justified, given that WWF Cape Verde has played a pivotal role in project conception and preparation, both prior to the PIF stage but also during PPG implementation. The process of NGO grant awarding will follow normal UNDP procedures for the purpose.

### Project Management

#### Oversight

1. Oversight of project activities will be the responsibility of two committees: the Project Steering Committee (PSC) and the Technical Advisory Committee (TAC):

**Project Steering Committee (PSC):** This committee will meet at least once per year to oversee all administrative and operational issues pertaining to the project, or whenever extraordinary meetings are deemed necessary. The committee will consist of representatives from the MADRRM (DGA, DGASP), the Ministry of Economy (DGT), the UNDP (including UNDP/EEG) and any other institution (national or local), organisation or partner that has a financial stake in the project. The NPC will act as Secretary to the PSC.

**Technical Advisory Committee (TAC):** This committee will meet four times a year to review progress made towards the project’s objectives and outcomes, and to provide substantive technical advice and support, as well as coordination with other development programs and projects existing in Cape Verde. The TAC membership will indicatively consist of representatives from DGA, DGASP, INIDA, DGT, ANMCV (National Municipal Association), International Cooperation, UNDP, Platform of NGOs (a national umbrella organisation for environmental NGOs), other international partners, and a Municipal Representative. DGA and UNDP will alternate as the chair of the TAC.

1. Day-to-day operational oversight will be ensured by UNDP, through the UN Joint Office in Praia, and strategic oversight will be ensured by the UNDP/EEG Regional Technical Advisor (RTA) responsible for the project.
2. ‘Section IV - ’ contains a simplified scheme that expresses the relationship between the different entities described in this chapter. See also and further down for details.

#### Project Management at the central level

1. The project will be supervised by the NPC, who will be directly responsible for all national level project objectives and activities (legal, institutional, policy, education, etc.). The NPC will also have supervisory responsibility for each of the project site areas. The structure of the PCU is outlined in. The CTA will provide technical support to the PCU. In addition, various national and international consultants will supplement this small core of national level staff. These consultants will be recruited for short and medium-term technical input, especially in the early stages of the project. At the national level, the project is expected to employ consultants in the following areas: Communications, (Socio) Economy, Marine biology, Botany, Land-use planning & forestry, and M&E and Reporting. Other, short-term national consultants will include those with skills in Land and Water (mostly at sites), Forestry (mostly at sites), Legal & Policy, Institutional, and Public Finance & Planning. At the international level, the project will employ expert consultants with considerable international experience in the areas of PA Finance, PA Planning & Management, Marine Biology, and Invasive Alien Species’ Specialty. All consultants (national and international) will report directly to the NPC in close consultation with the project’s CTA.
2. It is expected that the Cape Verde Government will contribute significantly to the staffing needs at the project site level. This has been confirmed through a cash contribution from the Ministry of Finance (through MADDRM) that will be managed by the UNDP in connection with the project and under the same budgetary award. Support staff such as drivers and secretaries will be employed directly by the DGA, but also others such as consultants, in accordance with the applicable NEX modality for the project. Community organizers/trainers (to be deployed to sites) will also be provided by the Government, and will most likely be drawn from existing community outreach personnel in other agencies such as the DGA and DGASP.
3. Finally, a cadre of international volunteers with a varied set of expertise profiles (and according to the project’s needs) will be deployed, mostly to the sites. This modality will mirror the successful experience of the Phase I Project, where several of the project’s national technical experts had been paired up with young international volunteers with profiles within the same area of expertise.

#### Project Management at site level

1. At the project site level, there will be two types of structures: the Project Site Units (PSUs) for terrestrial PA sites and the Island-Wide Offices (IWOs) for the MPAs. Although these structures will bear different designations, they will have similar attributes with respect to their overall responsibility for all project activities at the local level. Apart from the biome specialisation (terrestrial for the PSUs vs. coastal/marine for the IWOs), the main difference between PSUs and IWOs is that the later will have a wider coverage in terms of number of sites. IWOs will not only directly support the operationalisation of three target MPAs proposed under the project, but will also indirectly provide support to nine other MPAs within the ‘Island-Wide’ approach; e.g. the development of Island-Wide Conservation Strategy Plans will be an activity that will cover the entire island (including all MPAs within it) and will be supported by the IWO. The PSU’s responsibilities will be restricted to the project’s target terrestrial sites. Also, some of the MPAs supported by an IWO may come under a concession agreement with NGOs or other partners. Under such circumstances, the Office will be able not only to provide technical assistance services to supervise these agreements (on a cost recovery basis), but also to create synergies between projects and be a focal point for the concerted management of all MPAs on both Sal and Boavista Islands. For this reason, the IWOs are expected to be reinforced in their capacity through a technical assistance service provision agreement with WWF.[[48]](#footnote-49)
2. Two PSUs will be established – one on Santo Antão Island (responsible for 2 PAs plus 1 PAs on São Vicente Island) and one on Fogo Island (1 PA) – plus two IWOs – one on Sal Island one in Boavista, both of which are responsible for supporting all MPAs on the islands and more directly the three proposed MPAs. Each PSU/IWO will consist of a Project Site Manager (PSM) or an IWO Manager and a site project assistant/driver (provided by MADRRM). Each PSU will be supported from HQ by the NPC, the CTA and the project’s core team of consultants based in Praia. The technical cadre at the site/island levels will include a national expert in Ecological Monitoring, Mapping (who will serve different islands) and in Community Engagement. In addition, PSUs and IWOs count on international volunteers, provided by both DGA and the US Peace Corps (refer to Letter of Co-finance).
3. The PSU/IWO will co-ordinate, supervise, assist, control, monitor and report on the project’s execution at the local level. The PSU / IWO Manager, who will report to the NPC on a regular basis, will head this unit. The unit will be responsible for project planning and execution at the local level, maintaining overall project accounts, and monitoring performance. The PSU will liaise with the CTA for technical advice and issues regarding project activity implementation and planning. Each project site will have a local consulting committee (which is in fact a structure foreseen in Decree-Law 3/2003 on the PA management regime) to support project execution. This committee will act as the intermediary between the project’s site staff and local communities, and will consist of Municipal Council representatives, the MADRRM delegation, farmers’ associations and community organizations, and anyone else as applicable. Decentralization efforts in Cape Verde are resulting in municipalities taking an increasingly important role in natural resource and PA management. In some of the project site areas, municipalities have already prepared local action plans that incorporate integrated natural resource management activities. Natural resource management for biodiversity has, however, yet to be incorporated into local plans.

## PART IV: Monitoring and Evaluation Plan and Budget

### Monitoring and reporting

1. Project monitoring and evaluation will be conducted in accordance with established UNDP and GEF procedures. The project team and the UNDP Country Office (UNDP-CO) will provide M & E, with support from the UNDP/GEF Regional Coordination Unit in Dakar. The Logical Framework Matrix () provides performance and impact indicators for project implementation along with their corresponding means of verification. The METT tool, Financial Scorecard and Capacity Assessment Scorecard () will all be used as instruments to monitor progress in PA management effectiveness. The M&E plan includes: (i) an inception report, (ii) project implementation reviews, (ii) quarterly and annual review reports, and (iii) a mid-term and final evaluation. The following sections outline the principle components of the M &E Plan and indicative cost estimates related to M&E activities. The project's M &E Plan will be presented and finalized in the Project's Inception Report following a collective fine-tuning of indicators, means of verification, and the full definition of the project staff’s M&E responsibilities.

#### Inception Phase

1. A Project Inception Workshop will be conducted with the full project team, as well as with all relevant government counterparts, co-financing partners, the UNDP-CO and representatives from the UNDP EEG Regional Coordinating Unit, as well as UNDP EEG (HQs), as appropriate. A fundamental objective of this Inception Workshop will be to assist the project team in understanding and taking ownership of the project’s goals and objectives, as well as to finalize preparation of the project's first annual work plan on the basis of the logframe matrix. This will include reviewing the logframe (indicators, means of verification, assumptions), imparting additional detail as needed, and on the basis of this exercise, finalizing the Annual Work Plan (AWP) with precise and measurable performance indicators, in a manner that is consistent with the expected outcomes for the project. Additionally, the purpose and objective of the Inception Workshop (IW) will be to: (i) introduce project staff to the UNDP EEG team, who will support the project during its implementation, namely the CO and responsible Regional Coordinating Unit staff; (ii) detail the roles, support services and complementary responsibilities of UNDP-CO and RCU staff vis à vis the project team; (iii) provide a detailed overview of the GEF’s and UNDP’s reporting and monitoring and evaluation (M&E) requirements, with particular emphasis on the Annual Project Implementation Reviews (PIRs) and related documentation, the Annual Review Report (ARR), as well as mid-term and final evaluations. Equally, the IW will provide an opportunity to inform the project team on UNDP project related budgetary planning, budget reviews, and mandatory budget re-phasing. The IW will also provide an opportunity for all parties to fully understand their roles, functions, and responsibilities within the project's decision-making structures, including reporting and communication lines, and conflict resolution mechanisms. The Terms of Reference for project staff and decision-making structures will be discussed again, as needed, in order to clarify each party’s responsibilities during the project's implementation phase.

#### Monitoring responsibilities and events

1. A detailed schedule of project review meetings will be developed by the project management, in consultation with project implementation partners and stakeholder representatives and will be incorporated into the Project Inception Report. Such a schedule will include: (i) tentative time frames for Project Board Meetings and (ii) project related Monitoring and Evaluation activities. Day-to-day monitoring of implementation progresswill be the responsibility of the Project Manager and will be based on the project's Annual Work Plan and its indicators. The Project Manager will inform the UNDP-CO of any delays or difficulties faced during implementation so that the appropriate support or corrective measures can be adopted in a timely and remedial fashion. The Project Manager will fine-tune the progress and performance/impact indicators of the project in consultation with the full project team at the Inception Workshop with support from UNDP-CO and assisted by the UNDP EEG Regional Coordinating Unit. Specific targets for the first year implementation progress indicators together with their means of verification will be developed at this Workshop. These will be used to assess whether implementation is proceeding at the intended pace and in the right direction and will form part of the Annual Work Plan. Targets and indicators for subsequent years would be defined (or adjusted) annually as part of the internal evaluation and planning processes undertaken by the project team.
2. Measurement of impact indicators related to global biodiversity benefits will occur according to the schedules defined in the Inception Workshop, the METT for SO1 project being compulsory for all GEF financed projects. If applicable, the measurement of these will be undertaken through subcontracts or retainers with relevant institutions. Periodic monitoring of implementation progress will be undertaken by the UNDP-CO through quarterly meetings with the Implementing Partner, or more frequently as deemed necessary. This will allow parties to take stock of and to troubleshoot any problems pertaining to the project in a timely fashion to ensure smooth implementation of project activities. Annual Monitoring will occur through the PSC.This is the highest policy-level meeting of the parties directly involved in the implementation of a project. The project will be subject to PSC two times a year. The first such meeting will be held within the first six months of the start of full implementation.
3. The Project Manager, in consultation with UNDP-CO and UNDP EEG RCU will prepare a UNDP/GEF PIR/ARR and submit it to PSC members at least two weeks prior to the PSC for review and comments. The PIR/ARR will be used as one of the basic documents for initiating discussions in the PSC meeting. The Project Manager will present the PIR/ARR to the PSC, highlighting policy issues and recommendations for the decision of the PSC participants. The Project Manager will also inform the participants of any agreements reached by stakeholders during the PIR/ARR preparation on how to resolve operational issues. Separate reviews of each project component may also be conducted if necessary. The Project Board has the authority to suspend disbursement if project performance benchmarks are not met. Benchmarks will be developed at the Inception Workshop, and will be based on delivery rates, and qualitative assessments of achievements of outputs.
4. The terminal PSC meeting is held in the last month of project operations. The Project Manager is responsible for preparing the Terminal Report and submitting it to UNDP-CO and UNDP EEG RCU. It shall be prepared in draft at least two months prior to the terminal PSC in order to allow review, and will serve as the basis for discussions in the PBM. The terminal meeting considers the implementation of the project as a whole, paying particular attention to whether the project has achieved its stated objectives and contributed to the broader environmental objective. It decides whether any actions are still necessary, particularly in relation to the sustainability of the project’s results, and acts as a vehicle through which lessons learned are drawn for the consideration of other projects under implementation of formulation. UNDP Country Offices and UNDP EEG RCU will conduct, as appropriate, yearly visits to project sites based on an agreed upon schedule to be detailed in the project's Inception Report/Annual Work Plan to assess first-hand project progress. Any other member of the PSC can also accompany. A Field Visit Report/BTOR will be prepared by the CO and UNDP EEG RCU and circulated no less than one month after the visit to the project team, all PSC members, and UNDP EEG.

#### Project Reporting

1. The Project Manager, in conjunction with the UNDP EEG extended team, will be responsible for the preparation and submission of the following reports that form part of the monitoring process. The first six reports are mandatory and strictly related to monitoring, while the last two have a broader function and their frequency and nature is project specific and to be defined throughout implementation.
2. A Project Inception Report will be prepared immediately following the Inception Workshop. It will include a detailed First Year/ Annual Work Plan divided into quarterly timeframes detailing the activities and progress indicators that will guide implementation during the first year of the project. This Work Plan will include the dates of specific field visits, support missions from the UNDP-CO or the Regional Coordinating Unit (RCU) or consultants, as well as time-frames for meetings of the project's decision making structures. The Report will also include the detailed project budget for the first full year of implementation, prepared on the basis of the Annual Work Plan, and will also include any monitoring and evaluation requirements needed to effectively measure project performance during the targeted 12 month time-frame. The Inception Report will include a more detailed narrative of the institutional roles, responsibilities, coordinating actions and feedback mechanisms of project related partners. In addition, a section will be included on the progress to date of the project establishment and start-up activities and an update of any changed external conditions that may effect project implementation. When finalized, the report will be circulated to project counterparts who will be given a period of one calendar month in which to respond with comments or queries. Prior to this circulation of the IR, the UNDP Country Office and UNDP EEG’s Regional Coordinating Unit will review the document.
3. An Annual Review Report shall be prepared by the NCP in close collaboration with the CTA and shared with the PSC. As a self-assessment by the project management, it does not require a cumbersome preparatory process. As a minimum requirement, the Annual Review Report shall consist of the Atlas standard format for the Project Progress Report (PPR) covering the whole year with updated information for each element of the PPR as well as a summary of results achieved against pre-defined annual targets at the project level. As such, it can be readily used to spur dialogue with the PSC and partners. An ARR will be prepared on an annual basis prior to the PSC meeting to reflect progress achieved in meeting the project's Annual Work Plan and to assess the project’s performance in contributing to the intended outcomes through outputs and partnership work. The ARR should consist of the following sections: (i) project risks and issues; (ii) project progress as measured against pre-defined indicators and targets and (iii) outcome performance.
4. The Project Implementation Review (PIR) is an annual monitoring process mandated by the GEF. It has become an essential management and monitoring tool for project managers and offers the main vehicle for extracting lessons from ongoing projects. Once the project has been under implementation for a year, the CO together with the project team will implement a Project Implementation Report. The PIR should be participatory prepared in July and discussed with the CO and the UNDP EEG Regional Coordination Unit during August, with the final submission to the UNDP/GEF Headquarters in the first week of September.
5. Quarterly progress reports: Short reports (max 150 words)outlining main updates in project progress will be provided quarterly to the local UNDP Country Office and the UNDP EEG RCU by the project team.
6. UNDP ATLAS Monitoring Reports: A Combined Delivery Report (CDR) summarizing all project expendituresis mandatory and should be issued quarterly. The Project Manager should send it to the PSC for review and the Implementing Partner should certify it. The following logs should be prepared: (i) The Issues Log is used to capture and track the status of all project issues throughout the implementation of the project. It will be the responsibility of the Project Manager to track, capture and assign issues, and to ensure that all project issues are appropriately addressed; (ii) the Risk Log is maintained throughout the project to capture potential risks to the project and associated measures to manage risks. It will be the responsibility of the Project Manager to maintain and update the Risk Log, using Atlas; and (iii) the Lessons Learned Log is maintained throughout the project to capture insights and lessons based on good and bad experiences and behaviours.
7. Project Terminal Report: During the last three months of the project the project team will prepare the Project Terminal Report. This comprehensive report will summarize all activities, achievements and outputs of the Project, lessons learned, objectives met, or not achieved, structures and systems implemented, etc. and will be the definitive statement of the Project’s activities during its lifetime. It will also lay out recommendations for any further steps that may need to be taken to ensure the sustainability and replicability of the Project’s activities.
8. Periodic Thematic Reports: As and when called for by UNDP, UNDP EEG or the Implementing Partner, the project team will prepare Specific Thematic Reports, focusing on specific issues or areas of activity. The request for a Thematic Report will be provided to the project team in written form by UNDP and will clearly state the issue or activities that need to be reported on. These reports can be used as a form of lessons learned exercise, specific oversight in key areas, or as troubleshooting exercises to evaluate and overcome obstacles and difficulties encountered. UNDP is requested to minimize its requests for Thematic Reports, and when they are necessary will allow reasonable timeframes for their preparation by the project team.
9. Technical Reports are detailed documents covering specific areas of analysis or scientific specializations within the overall project. As part of the Inception Report, the project team will prepare a draft Reports List, detailing the technical reports that are expected to be prepared on key areas of activity during the course of the Project, and tentative due dates. Where necessary this Reports List will be revised and updated, and included in subsequent APRs. Technical Reports may also be prepared by external consultants and should be comprehensive, specialized analyses of clearly defined areas of research within the framework of the project and its sites. These technical reports will represent, as appropriate, the project's substantive contribution to specific areas, and will be used in efforts to disseminate relevant information and best practices at local, national and international levels.
10. Project Publications will form a key method of crystallizing and disseminating the results and achievements of the Project. These publications may be scientific or informational texts on the activities and achievements of the Project, in the form of journal articles, multimedia publications, etc. These publications can be based on Technical Reports, depending upon the relevance, scientific worth, etc. of these Reports, or may be summaries or compilations of a series of Technical Reports and other research. The project team will determine if any of the Technical Reports merit formal publication, and will also (in consultation with UNDP, the government and other relevant stakeholder groups) plan and produce these Publications in a consistent and recognizable format. Project resources will need to be defined and allocated for these activities as appropriate and in a manner commensurate with the project's budget.

### Independent Evaluations, Audits and financial reporting

1. The project will be subjected to at least two independent external evaluations as follows: An independent Mid-Term Evaluation will be undertaken at exactly the mid-point of the project’s lifetime. The Mid-Term Evaluation will determine the progress being made towards the achievement of outcomes and will identify course correction if needed. It will focus on the effectiveness, efficiency and timeliness of project implementation; will highlight issues requiring decisions and actions; and will present initial lessons learned regarding project design, implementation and management. Findings of this review will be incorporated as recommendations for enhanced implementation during the final half of the project’s term. The organization, terms of reference and timing of the mid-term evaluation will be decided after consultation between the parties to the project document. The Terms of Reference for this Mid-term evaluation will be prepared by the UNDP CO based on guidance from the UNDP EEG Regional Coordinating Unit.
2. An independent Final Evaluation will take place three months prior to the terminal PSC meeting, and will focus on the same issues as the mid-term evaluation. The final evaluation will also look at the impact and sustainability of results, including the contribution to capacity development and the achievement of global environmental goals. The Final Evaluation should also provide recommendations for follow-up activities. The Terms of Reference for this evaluation will be prepared by the UNDP CO based on guidance from the UNDP EEG Regional Coordinating Unit. Final TOR will need to be cleared by the EEG RTA.

### Audit Clause

1. The Government will provide the Resident Representative with certified periodic financial statements, as well as with an annual audit of the financial statements relating to the status of UNDP (including GEF) funds according to the established procedures set out in the Programming and Finance manuals. The Audit will be conducted according to UNDP financial regulations, rules and audit policies by the legally recognized auditor of the Government, or by a commercial auditor engaged by the Government.

Table 8. M&E Activities, Responsibilities, Budget and Time Frame

| **Type of M&E activity** | **Responsible Parties** | **Budget US$**  *Excluding project team staff time* | **Time frame** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Inception Workshop | Project Coordinator  UNDP CO  UNDP GEF | 10,000 | Within first two months of project start up |
| Inception Report | Project Team  UNDP CO | None | Immediately following IW |
| Measurement of Means of Verification for Project Purpose Indicators | Project Manager will oversee the hiring of specific studies and institutions, and delegate responsibilities to relevant team members | To be finalized in Inception Phase and Workshop. Indicative cost: 15,000. | Start, mid and end of project |
| Measurement of Means of Verification for Project Progress and Performance (measured on an annual basis) | Oversight by Project Manager  Project team | To be determined as part of the Annual Work Plan's preparation. Indicative cost: 8,000 (annually); total: 32,000 | Annually prior to ARR/PIR and to the definition of annual work plans |
| ARR and PIR | Project Team  UNDP CO  UNDP EEG | None | Annually |
| Quarterly progress reports | Project team | None | Quarterly |
| CDRs | Project Manager | None | Quarterly |
| Issues Log | Project Manager  UNDP CO Programme Staff | None | Quarterly |
| Risks Log | Project Manager  UNDP CO Programme Staff | None | Quarterly |
| Lessons Learned Log | Project Manager  UNDP CO Programme Staff | None | Quarterly |
| Mid-term Evaluation | Project team  UNDP CO  UNDP EEG Regional Coordinating Unit  External Consultants (i.e. evaluation team) | 40,000 | At the mid-point of project implementation. |
| Final Evaluation | Project team,  UNDP CO  UNDP EEG Regional Coordinating Unit  External Consultants (i.e. evaluation team) | 40,000 | At the end of project implementation |
| Terminal Report | Project team  UNDP-CO  local consultant | 0 | At least one month before the end of the project |
| Lessons learned | Project team  UNDP EEG Regional Coordinating Unit (suggested formats for documenting best practices, etc) | 12,000 (average 3,000 per year) | Yearly |
| Audit | UNDP CO  Project team | 8,000 | Yearly |
| TOTAL indicative COST  *Excluding project team staff time and UNDP staff and travel expenses* | | US$ 157,000 |  |

## PART V: Legal Context

1. This Project Document shall be the instrument referred to as such in Article I of the Standard Basic Assistance Agreement between the Government of Cape Verde and the United Nations Development Programme, signed by the parties on 31 January 1976. The host country-implementing agency shall, for the purpose of the Standard Basic Assistance Agreement, refer to the government co-operating agency described in that Agreement.
2. The UNDP Resident Representative in Praia is authorized to effect in writing the following types of revision to this Project Document, provided that he/she has verified the agreement thereto by the UNDP EEG Unit and is assured that the other signatories to the Project Document have no objection to the proposed changes:
3. Revision of, or addition to, any of the annexes to the Project Document;
4. Revisions which do not involve significant changes in the immediate objectives, outputs or activities of the project, but are caused by the rearrangement of the inputs already agreed to or by cost increases due to inflation;
5. Mandatory annual revisions which re-phase the delivery of agreed project inputs or increased expert or other costs due to inflation or take into account agency expenditure flexibility; and
6. Inclusion of addition all annexes and attachments only as set out here in this Project Document

# SECTION II: STRATEGIC RESULTS FRAMEWORK (SRF) AND GEF INCREMENT

## PART I: Strategic Results Framework, SRF (formerly GEF Logical Framework) Analysis

### Indicator framework as part of the SRF

| **Objective/ Outcome** | **Indicator** | **Baseline** | **End of Project target** | **Source of Information** | **Assumptions** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Objective –** To consolidate and strengthen Cape Verde’s protected areas (PA) System through the establishment of new terrestrial and marine PA units and the promotion of participatory approaches to conservation. | 1. The overall level of the PA System that is operational increases from a baseline of 3,700 ha or 6% of the gazetted PA/MPA estate as result of the project | Only 3,700 ha or 6% of the gazetted PA/MPA estate is currently operational | As a cumulative GEF investment in Cape Verde, 76,772 ha or 73% of the PA/MPA expanded estate are operational, as independently verified by project evaluators | Mid-Term and Final Evaluations | Baseline conditions in the selected PA can be extrapolated with a high confidence level to other Cape Verde PAs, and lessons learned can be successfully disseminated.  Some development sectors and private enterprises (i.e. tourism, real-estate) will collaborate effectively towards PA management. |
| 2. Average sea turtle emergences in specific areas (t.b.d) within the three target MPA sites for the project  *Sites are: Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Ponta do Sinó, and Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista* | Baseline values t.b.d by specialists upon project inception | Target values t.b.d by specialists upon project inception | Field surveys carried out in connection with the project’s ecological monitoring system |
| 3. Rate of native/endemic species vegetative growth versus IAS cover in specific areas of target terrestrial PA sites for the project  *Sites are: Chã das Caldeiras NP; Monte Verde NP; Morroços NP; and Cova/Paúl/R da Torre NP* | Baseline values t.b.d by specialists upon project inception | Target values t.b.d by specialists upon project inception | Field surveys carried out in connection with the project’s ecological monitoring system |
| **Outcome 1 –** Governance framework for the expansion, consolidation and sustainability of the National PA system is strengthened | 1. Increased scores on the UNDP’s Financial Sustainability Scorecard for National Systems of Protected Areas over the baseline | Total Score for PA System = 33 out of a total possible score of 197 (i.e. 17%)  *Refer to and for respectively for summarised and detailed scores* | Scores, expressed in absolute terms, increase by at least 30% | Application of UNDP’s Financial Sustainability Scorecard (as part of the METT) through CEO Endorsement, mid-term and final evaluations | There is full commitment from the MADDRM and the Ministry of Finance to support financially and technically the establishment and functionality of the new PAAA.  Key stakeholders in Cape Verde (government, private sector and communities) realise the importance and economic potential of a functional PA System |
| 2. Increased scores on the UNDP’s Capacity Development Scorecard of Protected Areas Management over the baseline | Systemic 9 / 30 (30%)  Institutional 18 / 45 (41%)  Individual 10 / 21 (46%)  (General avg. 37%)  *Refer to for summarised and detailed scores* | Scores, expressed in absolute terms, increase by at least 20% | Application of UNDP’s Capacity Development Scorecard through CEO Endorsement, mid-term and final evaluations |
| **Outcome 2 –**  Management effectiveness at selected terrestrial and coastal/marine Pas is enhanced | 1. Increased scores on the GEF4’s PA Management Effectiveness Tracking Tool “METT” for all seven target sites | Scores for target PAs / MPAs  [1] MPA S. Negra/C. da Fragata 15  [2] MPA P do Sinó 15  [3] PM do Leste de Boavista 18  [4] Chã das Caldeiras NP 61  [5] Monte Verde NP 13  [6] Morroços NP 15  [7] Cova/Paúl/R da Torre NP 15  *Refer to for the complete METT* | Scores, expressed in absolute terms, increase by at least 40% | Application of the METT through CEO Endorsement, mid-term and final evaluations | There is wide support at the central and local levels for the establishment of PAs and MPAs |
| 2. Expansion of the MPA sub-set of the PA estate through the consolidation of smaller areas and an expansion into the sea for fisheries’ stock protection (representing 27,754 ha of additional area in reconfiguration of the MPA boundaries on two Islands, Sal and Boavista) | Three MPAs have been proposed, with roughly mapped out boundaries and hectarage and borders:  (i) MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island; (ii) MPA Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island; (iii) Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista | MPAs effectively established with confirmed hectarage and boundaries | Official gazette for the legal creation of sites, Project Implementation Reports (PIRs) for progress towards it and evaluation reports for verification of the establishment of MPAs |
| 3. Enforcement of a PA Zoning Plan for critical PAs is effective, as measured by the annual number of infractions reported on each site  *Verifying the level of effectiveness of plan enforcement may be also corroborated by other indicators, to be defined upon inception.* | Baseline to be defined once Plan is in force and a monitoring system for infractions is in place. | Target value to be defined once Plans are in force and a monitoring system for infractions is in place | Indicatively through the annual number of infractions reported on each site, but may be corroborated by other sources |
| **Outcome 3** –  The sustainability of PAs is strengthened through community mobilization, sectoral engagement and local capacity building for sustainable resource management within PAs/MPAs and adjacent areas | 1. Level of compliance with resource and land uses’ threshold limits established in the management plans for 4 terrestrial PAs and 3 MPAs (in particular with respect to fuel-wood collection, agriculture, tourism, fisheries, real-estate developments)  *(See PRODOC Box 3 for a reference*) | Target terrestrial PAs (Chã das Caldeiras NP; Monte Verde NP; Morroços NP; and Cova/Paúl/R da Torre NP) and MPAs Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Ponta do Sinó and Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista do not yet count on management plans that provide guidance on resource and land uses’ threshold limits within and around the areas | There is general compliance with threshold limits defined in PA/MPA management plans, as assessed independently through the project’s mid-term and final evaluations. | Management plans and field surveys and project’s M&E system duly verified by evaluators | Awareness raised will result in improved natural resource and conservation management.  Local capacity building will effectively result in an integrated and effective PA management system.  The operationalisation of PAs will result in (or be counter-balanced by) improved livelihoods for adjacent communities and better business for tourism operators. |

### List of Outputs per Outcome as part of the SRF

|  |
| --- |
| **Project’s Development Goal:** To conserve globally significant terrestrial and marine biodiversity in priority ecosystems of Cape Verde through a protected area system’s approach. |

| **Project Objective:** To consolidate and strengthen Cape Verde’s protected areas (PA) System through the establishment of new terrestrial and marine PA units and the promotion of participatory approaches to conservation. | |
| --- | --- |
| **Outcomes** | **Outputs** |
| 1) Governance framework for the expansion, consolidation and sustainability of the National PA system is strengthened | |  |  | | --- | --- | | 1.1 | The PA Autonomous Authority (PAAA) is established, operational and appropriately staffed with trained personnel and with a strengthened capacity to manage both terrestrial PAs and MPAs | | 1.2 | PA planning and management tools have been developed and are under implementation, including (i) a National PA Zoning Plan; (ii) a National PA Strategy; and (iii) a National PA Business Plan | | 1.3 | The new PAAA is cooperating effectively with relevant institutions for sustainable resource management | | 1.4 | Quantitative data on climate change and carbon sequestration is effectively informing the design and implementation of the National PA strategy | |
| 2) Management effectiveness at selected terrestrial and marine PAs is enhanced | |  |  | | --- | --- | | 2.1 | Management and business plans have been prepared and implemented in a participatory fashion in 4 terrestrial PAs and in 3 MPAs involving communities, private land owners and tourism operators, among others | | 2.2 | Island-Wide Conservation Strategy Plans have been implemented and are supporting the establishment of all of the MPAs on Sal and Boavista Islands | | 2.3 | Ecological monitoring systems are in place for the seven target PAs/MPAs, yielding relevant data on the health of ecosystems | | 2.4 | Exotic species are under management and IAS are under sustained control in target terrestrial Pas | | 2.5 | A Fisheries Management Plan is under implementation, as a result of cooperation agreements between the Directorate of Fisheries and the Island-Wide Office, at all MPA sites | |
| 3) The sustainability of PAs is strengthened through community mobilization, sectoral engagement and local capacity building for sustainable resource management within PAs/MPAs and adjacent areas | |  |  | | --- | --- | | 3.1 | Organized communities, farmers associations, and associations of artisanal fishermen have the capacity to engage in biodiversity friendly income-generating activities as an alternative to resource degrading ones | | 3.2 | Local governments, resource institutions, private operators, NGOs and others participate actively and collaboratively in biodiversity conservation in PAs and MPAs through the established Advisory Councils for the project’s target PAs and MPAs | | 3.3 | The integration of PA/MPA planning and strategizing into local development frameworks ensure that sectoral development at the local level is more harmonious with the conservation objectives and activities of PAs and MPAs | |

1. A detailed activity list and a chronogram of activities per output is under development and will be finalised upon project inception.

## PART II: Incremental Cost Analysis

Table 9. Incremental Cost Matrix

| **Cost/Benefit** | **Baseline**  **(B)** | **Alternative**  **(A)** | **Increment**  **(A-B)** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **BENEFITS** |  |  |  |
| **Global benefits** | Cape Verde’s PA system will be limited to two functionally operational terrestrial PA units. The other 19 terrestrial PA units and 26 marine and coastal PA units will remain “paper parks”, and biodiversity at these sites will continue to be severely impacted by unsustainable resource use, land/seascape transformation, and IAS. In addition, the national institutional and policy framework for protected areas will remain incomplete, with PA management consigned to a small unit within the DGA (that also is charged with numerous other duties) and with no integration of MPAs into the existing management framework. | Systemic and institutional barriers will be removed, enhancing both the area of terrestrial and marine PAs and improving their financial sustainability, management capacities, and monitoring and enforcement regimes. These benefits will extend directly to 4 terrestrial PAs and 3 MPAs, plus indirectly to 9 MPAs through the support from Island Wide Offices, thereby increasing the area of coverage benefiting from active PA management and functioning from 3,700 ha to 76,772 ha by the end of the project (or from 6% of the existing estate to 77% of the expanded one). | Barriers for the consolidation and strengthening of Cape Verde’s PA System through the establishment of new terrestrial and marine PA units and the promotion of participatory approaches to conservation is ensured. |
| **National Benefits** | Reduced ecosystem services derived from both terrestrial and marine ecosystems. Land degradation, depletion of natural resources in terrestrial landscapes (water, land, firewood) will exacerbate poverty. Fish stocks will be gradually depleted due to a lack of habitat protection, with a negative effect on tourism. | Under the alternative scenario, Cape Verde will benefit from medium-long term increases in ecosystem services and other economic benefits in land and aquifer protection, due to the improved management of terrestrial ecosystems, as well as fisheries, marine and coastal recreation, due to increased populations of marine species, increased ecosystem resiliency and reduced levels of marine contamination. | Increased national awareness about the importance of good stewardship of natural resources. A consolidated and functional PA System generates resources and improves national capacities. |
| **COSTS** |  |  |  |
| **Outcome 1:** Governance framework for the expansion, consolidation and sustainability of the National PAs system is strengthened | **Baseline: $ 16.162 million**  MADRRM’s Programme on:   * Natural Resource Management * Research on fisheries and agriculture * Disaster reduction | **Alternative: $ 22.872 million** | **Increment in $ million:**   |  |  | | --- | --- | | Austria | 5.560 | | MADDRM | 0.029 | | **GEF** | **1.121** | | **TOTAL** | **6.710** | |
| **Outcome 2:**  Management effectiveness at selected terrestrial and marine PAs is enhanced | **Baseline: $ 7.235 million**  MADRRM’s Programme on:   * Water Resource Management * Agroforestry * Fisheries | **Alternative: $ 12.231 million** | **Increment in $ million:**   |  |  | | --- | --- | | Austria | 1.915 | | Spain | 1.646 | | WWF | 0.375 | | **GEF** | **1.060** | | **TOTAL** | **4.996** | |
| **Outcome 3:**  The sustainability of PAs is strengthened through community mobilization, sectoral engagement and local capacity building for sustainable resource management within PAs/MPAs and adjacent areas | **Baseline: $ 120.000 million**  UN System $70 million  EU, France and others (rough estimate) $50 million | **Alternative: $ 125.900 million** | **Increment in $ million:**   |  |  | | --- | --- | | MADRRM | 4.936 | | Peace Corps | 0.336 | | **GEF** | **0.628** | | **TOTAL** | **5.900** | |
| **Others**: Project Management Unit, Program Implementation Technical Support Team, and Indicative Monitoring | **n/a** | **Alternative: $ 2.274 million** | **Increment in $ million:**   |  |  | | --- | --- | | MADRRM | 1.683 | | UNDP | 0.300 | | **GEF** | **0.291** | | **TOTAL** | **2.274** | |
| **TOTAL COSTS** | **Baseline: $ 143.397 million** | **Alternative: $ 163.277 million** | **Increment in $ million:**   |  |  | | --- | --- | | Austria | 7.475 | | MADRRM | 6.648 | | Spain | 1.646 | | Peace Corps | 0.336 | | WWF | 0.375 | | UNDP | 0.300 | | **GEF** | **3.100** | | **TOTAL** | **19.880** | |

# SECTION III: TOTAL BUDGET AND WORKPLAN

## PART I: Total Budget and Workplan

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Project ID:** | 00072402 |  | **Business Unit:** | CPV10 |
| **Award ID:** | 00058319 |  | **Project Title:** | **Project title**: **Consolidation of Cape Verde’s Protected Areas System** |
| **Award Title:** | PIMS 4176 FSP Consolidation of Cape Verdes PAs |  | **Implementing Partner (Executing Agency)** | General Directorate for the Environment (DGA) |

| **GEF Outcome/ Atlas Activity** | **Resp. Party/ Impl. Agent** | **Fund ID** | **Donor Name** | **ERP / ATLAS Budget Code** | **Altlas Budget Description** | **TOTAm Amount (USD)** | **Amount 2010 (USD)** | **Amount 2011 (USD)** | **Amount 2012 (USD)** | **Amount 2013 (USD)** | **Budget Notes** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Outcome 1**  **Governance PA Framework** | NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71100 | ALD Employee Costs | 180,000 | 45,000 | 90,000 | 45,000 |  | b |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71200 | International Consultants | 24,000 |  |  | 24,000 |  | r |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71400 | Contractual Services - Individ | 540,000 | 90,000 | 180,000 | 180,000 | 90,000 | c, d, e, f, g, h |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71600 | Travel | 20,000 | 20,000 |  |  |  |  |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 72100 | Contractual Services-Companies | 150,000 | 60,000 | 30,000 | 30,000 | 30,000 | al, am |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 73100 | Rental & Maintenance-Premises | 192,000 | 48,000 | 48,000 | 48,000 | 48,000 | aq |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 74500 | Miscellaneous Expenses | 15,000 | 10,000 | 5,000 |  |  | ap |
| **GEF Subtotal Atlas Activity 1 (Out 1)** | | | | | 1,121,000 | 273,000 | 353,000 | 327,000 | 168,000 |  |
| NEX | 30000 | Govt | 71400 | Contractual Services - Individ | 47,000 | 6,000 | 11,000 | 16,000 | 14,000 | ad, ae, af |
| NEX | 30000 | Govt | 72100 | Contractual Services-Companies | 10,000 |  |  | 10,000 |  | ac, |
| **Govt Subtotal Atlas Activity 1 (Outc 1)** | | | | | 57,000 | 6,000 | 11,000 | 26,000 | 14,000 |  |
| **TOTAL ACTIVITY 1 (Outc 1)** | | | | | | **1,178,000** | **279,000** | **364,000** | **353,000** | **182,000** |  |
| **Outcome 2**  **Site level PA management effectiveness** | NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71400 | Contractual Services - Individ | 940,000 | 160,000 | 260,000 | 260,000 | 260,000 | k,l, n,o |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71600 | Travel | 120,000 | 30,000 | 30,000 | 30,000 | 30,000 |  |
| **GEF Subtotal Atlas Activity 2 (Out 2)** | | | | | 1,060,000 | 190,000 | 290,000 | 290,000 | 290,000 |  |
| NEX | 04000 | UNDP TRAC - 00012 | 72100 | Contractual Services-Companies | 60,000 | 15,000 | 15,000 | 15,000 | 15,000 | ak |
| **TRAC Subtotal Atlas Activity 2 (Outc 2)** | | | | | 60,000 | 15,000 | 15,000 | 15,000 | 15,000 |  |
| NEX | 30000 | Govt | 71400 | Contractual Services - Individ | 280,000 | 40,000 | 80,000 | 80,000 | 80,000 | m |
| **Govt Subtotal Atlas Activity 2 (Outc 2)** | | | | | 280,000 | 40,000 | 80,000 | 80,000 | 80,000 |  |
| **TOTAL ACTIVITY 2 (Outc 2)** | | | | | | **1,400,000** | **245,000** | **385,000** | **385,000** | **385,000** |  |
| **Outcome 3**  **PA sustainability** | NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71200 | International Consultants | 100,000 |  | 82,000 | 18,000 |  | i, s, t |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71300 | Local Consultants | 48,000 |  | 24,000 | 24,000 |  | v, w |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 72100 | Contractual Services-Companies | 280,000 | 40,000 | 60,000 | 120,000 | 60,000 | ag, ai, as |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 72600 | Grants | 120,000 |  |  | 50,000 | 70,000 | ah |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 73200 | Premises Alternations | 80,000 | 20,000 | 20,000 | 20,000 | 20,000 | ar |
| **GEF Subtotal Atlas Activity 3 (Out 3)** | | | | | 628,000 | 60,000 | 186,000 | 232,000 | 150,000 |  |
| **TOTAL ACTIVITY 3 (Outc 3)** | | | | | | **628,000** | **60,000** | **186,000** | **232,000** | **150,000** |  |
| **Project Own Management Budget** | NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71200 | International Consultants | 30,000 |  | 15,000 |  | 15,000 | u |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71300 | Local Consultants | 10,000 |  | 5,000 |  | 5,000 | ab |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71400 | Contractual Services - Individ | 160,000 | 40,000 | 40,000 | 40,000 | 40,000 | a |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 71600 | Travel | 41,000 | 11,000 | 10,000 | 10,000 | 10,000 |  |
| NEX | 62000 | GEF-10003 | 72200 | Equipment and Furniture | 50,000 | 25,000 | 15,000 | 5,000 | 5,000 | ao |
| **GEF Subtotal Atlas Activity 4 (Project Management)** | | | | | 291,000 | 76,000 | 85,000 | 55,000 | 75,000 |  |
| NEX | 04000 | UNDP TRAC - 00012 | 71600 | Travel | 140,000 | 40,000 | 40,000 | 30,000 | 30,000 |  |
| NEX | 04000 | UNDP TRAC - 00012 | 72200 | Equipment and Furniture | 40,000 | 40,000 |  |  |  | at |
| NEX | 04000 | UNDP TRAC - 00012 | 72800 | Information Technology Equipmt | 60,000 | 20,000 | 20,000 | 10,000 | 10,000 | an |
| **TRAC Subtotal Atlas Activity 4 (Project Management)** | | | | | 240,000 | 100,000 | 60,000 | 40,000 | 40,000 |  |
| NEX | 30000 | Govt | 71300 | Local Consultants | 36,000 |  |  | 26,000 | 10,000 | y, z, aa |
| NEX | 30000 | Govt | 71400 | Contractual Services - Individ | 340,000 | 85,000 | 85,000 | 85,000 | 85,000 | j, p, q |
| NEX | 30000 | Govt | 72200 | Equipment and Furniture | 70,000 | 70,000 |  |  |  | at, as |
| **Govt Subtotal Atlas Activity 4 (Project Management)** | | | | | 446,000 | 155,000 | 85,000 | 111,000 | 95,000 |  |
| **TOTAL ACTIVITY 4 (Project Management)** | | | | | | **977,000** | **331,000** | **230,000** | **206,000** | **210,000** |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **SUB-TOTAL GEF** | | | | | **3,100,000** | **599,000** | **914,000** | **904,000** | **683,000** |  |
|  | **SUB-TOTAL UNDP TRAC** | | | | | **300,000** | **115,000** | **75,000** | **55,000** | **55,000** |  |
|  | **SUB-TOTAL Govt** | | | | | **783,000** | **201,000** | **176,000** | **217,000** | **189,000** |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **GRAND TOTAL (in cash)** | | | | | **4,183,000** | **915,000** | **1,165,000** | **1,176,000** | **927,000** |  |

| **Budget Notes** | |
| --- | --- |
| General Notes | * **For budget notes from “a” to “ab”:** Refer to ‘Section IV, ’, and within it ‘’, and , for detailed information on the costing of the project teams and consultants by sources of funds (GEF, UNDP or Government). Details include the number of weeks or years that they are expected to be hired for and the key tasks that these consultants will perform. * **Project vehicles** will be purchased with UNDP TRAC funds and for the sites only. In Praia, the project vehicle will be directly provided by the government. * **Domestic travel** to the islands will be necessary for the National Coordinator (at least four visits per year to each site), as well as for other members of the PMU and project consultants. These costs tend to be high in Cape Verde, as the market for air travel is basically monopolistic. A budget of $41,000 was reserved to management-related travel. * **All international travel by the coordination team** (e.g. in connection with participation in relevant international events, such CBD COPs, seminars, Parks’ Congress, etc.) will be charged to the UNDP travel budget. * **Boat rental** will be necessary in connection with the operationalisation of MPAs. These costs are being charged to the UNDP budget. |
| a | National project coordinator - 160 k |
| b | Chief Technical Advisor - CTA - 180 K |
| c | Nat Communications officer- 90 K |
| d | Nat Socio Economist - 90 K |
| e | Nat Marine Biologist - 90 K |
| f | Nat Botanist - 90 K |
| g | Nat Land-use planning and forestry - 90 K |
| h | Nat M&E and reporting officer - 90 K |
| i | Int PA planning and eco-tourism specialist - 40 K |
| j | Nat Finance and HR - 80 K |
| k | Nat Site managers - 240 K |
| l | Nat IWO managers - 240 K |
| m | Nat Community engagement - 280 K |
| n | Nat Ecological monitoring - 280 K |
| o | Nat Mapping - 180 K |
| p | Int Volunteers - 100 K |
| q | Nat Drivers - 160 K |
| r | Int PA Finance- 24 K |
| s | Int PA Planning and Management - 36 K |
| t | Int IAS Specialist - 24 K |
| u | Int Evaluator - 30 k |
| v | Nat Land and Water (mostly at sites) - 24 K |
| w | Nat Forestry (mostly at sites) - 24 K |
| y | Nat Legal, Policy - 16 K |
| z | Nat Institutional - 10 K |
| aa | Nat Public finance and planning - 10 K |
| ab | Nat Evaluator - 10K |
| ac | Web design: establishing and maintaining an effective project website |
| ad | Translations |
| ae | Editorial: preparing project publications in an effective manner |
| af | Desktop publishing: preparing project publications in an effective manner |
| ag | WWF support to IWO (refer to PRODOC paragraph for more detail.) / Training of local CBOs by more experienced NGOs (refer to description of Output 3.1) |
| ah | Micro-grants to local NGOs in connection with output Output 3.3 (*Organized communities, farmer associations, and associations of artisanal fishermen have the capacity to engage in biodiversity friendly income-generating activities as an alternative to resource degrading ones*). This will be further developed during the inception phase and it will be coordinated with Cape Verde’s Small Grants Programme. |
| ai | Partnership agreements for technical assistance service delivery (e.g. with national and international centres of excellence). A small budget of $40K is reserved to this in connection with outputs 3.1 to 3.4. This will be further developed during the inception phase. |
| ak | Boat rental |
| al | Inception workshop |
| am | Other consultations (at site level, in the capital), meetings, training, etc). This will be further developed during the inception phase |
| an | IT: (computers, printers, scanners, GIS and other), but also internet connection (may be later broken down into other budget lines, e.g. 72400 ‘Communic & Audio Visual Equip’ or others as applicable). |
| ao | Furniture: for the central office, PMUs and IWOs and/or volunteer housing. |
| ap | Goods transports and associated costs: A small budget of $15K was reserved for the purpose. |
| aq | Rental: The project may need to hire offices and volunteer accommodation on the islands. A small budget of $12,000 per year per office (PMUs or IWOs) has been reserved for the purpose. Should it show that this will not be necessary, funds will be re-allocated to other activities. |
| ar | Premises’ alterations (but also maintenance): Where government offices are provided, alterations will likely be necessary to allow for the installation of equipments etc. |
| as | New infrastructures and roads: to be charged to government funds, in connection with new infrastructures on the sites. |
| at | Vehicles (see general note.) |

# SECTION IV: ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

## PART I: Co-financing Letters

[Refer to separate file for the letters]

### Overview of Co-financing Letters

Table 10. Project’s co-financing letters

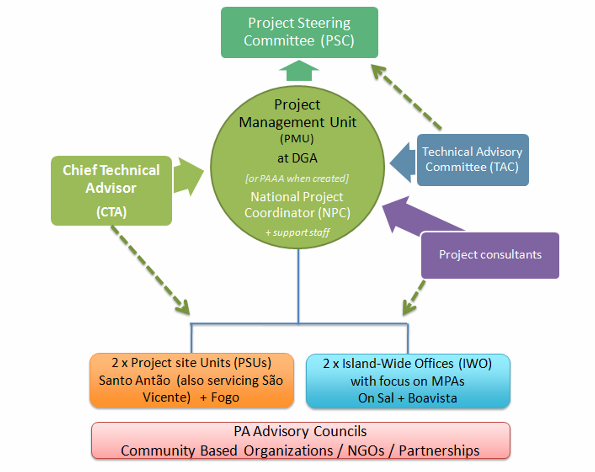
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***Name of Co-financier*** | ***Date*** | ***Page*** | ***Language*** | ***Amount mentioned in letters*** | ***Amounts considered as project co-financing (in USD)*** |
| MADRRM - Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources | 07-Aug-09 |  | EN | $5,865,926 | $5,865,926 |
| MADRRM - Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources / management of the PA Programme \* | 07-Aug-09 |  | EN | $783,000 | $783,000 |
| UN Joint Office in Cape Verde / UNDP core funds\* | 15-Jul-09 |  | EN | $200,000 | $200,000 |
| UN Joint Office in Cape Verde / UN "Delivery As One" funds (DAO)\* | 15-Jul-09 |  | EN | $100,000 | $100,000 |
| Spanish Cooperation | 23-Jul-09 |  | EN | 1,184,385 Euros | $1,646,295 |
| Austrian Cooperation | 05-Aug-09 |  | EN | 5,377,350 euros | $7,474,517 |
| Peace Corps (USA) | 30-Aug-09 and 13-Aug-09 |  | EN | $56,000 per volunteer per year | $336,000 |
| WWF Cape Verde | 02-Oct-09 |  | FR | $375,000 | $375,000 |
| **TOTAL** | | | | | **$16,780,738** |

Notes:

\* This is in cash, entrusted to UNDP to be managed in connection with the project under the same budgetary award.

Refer to for an overview of cash contributions to be managed by UNDP under the project.

## PART II: Organigram of Project



## PART III: Terms of References for key project staff

### National Project Coordinator

Background

The National Project Coordinator (NPC), will be a locally recruited national selected based on an open competitive process. He/She will be responsible for the overall management of the project, including the mobilization of all project inputs and the supervision of project staff, consultants and sub-contractors. The NPC will report to the UNDP RR (or duly designated UN officer) for all of the project’s substantive and administrative issues. From a strategic point of view, the NPC will report to the Project Steering Committee (PSC) on a periodic basis. The NPC will be responsible for meeting government obligations under the project, under the national execution modality (NEX). He/She will perform a liaison role with the Government, the UNDP and other UN Agencies, NGOs and project partners, and will remain in close collaboration with other donor agencies that provide co-financing.

Duties and Responsibilities

* Supervise and coordinate the production of project outputs, as per the project document;
* Mobilize all project inputs in accordance with UNDP procedures for nationally executed projects;
* Supervise and coordinate the work of all project staff, consultants and sub-contractors;
* Coordinate the recruitment and selection of project personnel;
* Prepare and revise project work and financial plans, as required by the DGA and UNDP;
* Liaise with the UNDP, DGA, relevant government agencies, and all project partners, including donor organizations and NGOs, to ensure effective coordination of all project activities;
* Facilitate administrative backstopping to subcontractors and training activities supported by the Project;
* Oversee and ensure a timely submission of the Inception Report, Combined Project Implementation Review/Annual Project Report (PIR/APR), Technical reports, quarterly financial reports, and any other reports that may be required by the UNDP, GEF, DGA and other oversight agencies;
* Disseminate project reports and respond to queries from concerned stakeholders;
* Report the project’s progress to the steering committees, and ensure the fulfilment of all steering committee directives.
* Oversee the exchange and sharing of experiences and lessons learned with all relevant community based integrated conservation and development projects, both national and international;
* Ensure the timely and effective implementation of all components of the project;
* Assist community groups, municipalities, NGOs, staff, students and others with the development of essential skills through training workshops and on the job training, thereby upgrading their institutional capabilities;
* Coordinate and assist scientific institutions with the initiation and implementation of all field studies and monitoring components of the project
* Assist and advise the teams responsible for documentaries, TV spots, guidebooks and awareness campaign, field studies, etc; and
* Carry regular, announced and unannounced inspections of all sites and the activities of the project site management units.

Qualifications

* A university degree (MS or PhD) in Natural Resource Management, Conservation or Environmental Sciences;
* At least 10 years of experience in natural resource and water management;
* At least 5 years of project/programme management experience;
* Working experience with ministries and national institutions (Ministry of Environment, Agriculture and Tourism) is a plus, but not a requirement;
* Ability to effectively coordinate a large, multi-stakeholder project;
* Ability to administer budgets, train and work effectively with counterpart staff at all levels and with all groups involved in the project;
* Strong drafting, presentation and reporting skills;
* Strong computer skills, in particular the mastery of all applications of the MS Office package and internet search;
* Strong knowledge about Cape Verde’s political and socio-economic context, in particular at the National and Municipal levels;
* Excellent writing communication skills in Portuguese and English; and
* A good working knowledge of English is a requirement.

### Chief Technical Adviser

The Chief Technical Adviser (CTA) will be responsible for providing overall technical backstopping to the Project. He/She will render technical support to the National Project Coordinator (NPC), staff and other government counterparts. The CTA will coordinate the provision of the required technical inputs, review and prepare the Terms of Reference and review the outputs of consultants and other sub-contractors. The CTA will be an experienced expatriate. He/She will report directly to the National Project Coordinator.

Duties and Responsibilities

* Provide technical and strategic assistance for project activities, including planning, monitoring and site operations, and assuming quality control of interventions;
* Provide hands-on support to the National Project Coordinator, project staff and other government counterparts in the areas of project management and planning, management of site activities, monitoring, and impact assessment;
* Finalize the Terms of Reference for consultants and sub-contractors, and assist in the selection and recruitment process;
* Coordinate the work of all consultants and sub-contractors, ensure the timely delivery of expected outputs, and ensure effective synergy among the various sub-contracted activities;
* Assist the National Project Coordinator in the preparation and revision of the Management Plan as well as the Annual Work Plans;
* Coordinate the preparation of the periodic Status Report when called for by the National Project Coordinator;
* Assist the National Project Coordinator in the preparation of the Combined Project Implementation Review/Annual Project Report (PIR/APR), the inception report, technical reports, and the quarterly financial reports for submission to the UNDP, the GEF and any other donors and Government Departments, as required;
* Assist in mobilizing staff and consultants in the conduct of a mid-term project evaluation, and in undertaking revisions in the implementation program and strategy based on evaluation results;
* Assist the National Project Coordinator in liaison work with project partners, donor organizations, NGOs and other groups in order to ensure the effective coordination of project activities;
* Document lessons from project implementation and make recommendations to the Steering Committee for more effective implementation and coordination of project activities; and
* Perform other tasks as may be requested by the National Project Coordinator, Steering Committee and other project partners.

Qualifications

* University education (MS or PhD) with expertise in the area of natural resource management, water resource management or environmental management in general;
* At least 10 years of professional experience, of which at least eight are at an international level
* Strong skills in monitoring and evaluating and experience in implementing environmental projects;
* Previous experience with GEF projects is a bonus;
* Ability to effectively coordinate a large, multidisciplinary team of experts and consultants;
* Be an effective negotiator with excellent oral and presentation skills;
* Excellent writing skills in English,
* A good working knowledge of Portuguese is an added plus.

### Overview of Inputs from Technical Assistance Consultants

Table 11. Overview of Inputs from Technical Assistance Consultants

| **Consultant** | **Assignments** | **Tasks and Inputs** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Local / National recruitment** | | |
| Core technical team in Praia | 6 persons  full time / over 3 years | Reporting to the NPC in close collaboration with the CTA, the project’s core technical team will include six long term consultants with a varied set of skills. Within their specific areas of expertise, and as a team, they will be responsible for producing results under all of the project’s outcomes and outputs support.  The skills profiles will include the following:   * Communications specialist (polyglot with excellent writing and IT skills) * (Socio) Economist * Marine biologist * Botanist * Land-use planning and forestry * M&E and reporting officer   Specific TOR for all these posts will be developed upon inception.  The team will be supported by an Admin/Finance/ HR Officer financed by Government. Specific TOR will be designed upon inception. |
| Site managers  IWO managers | 4 person full time / over 4 years | Site managers on terrestrial sites (based on Fogo and Santo Antão and covering São Vicente from the later) and Island Wide Officers (IWO) managers will lead the site teams, reporting to the NPC in Praia. Their skills will be both technical and managerial with strong leadership skills.  For Site managers, technical skills may focus on land management, water, forestry or soil with a good understanding for conservation issues.  For IWO managers, skills may focus on fisheries or integrated coastal zone management with a good understanding for conservation issues.  Specific TOR for Site and IWO Managers will be designed upon inception. |
| Site and  IWO Technical Teams | Refer to for more detail | Site managers and IWO will be supported by a small technical cadre which will include the following skills:   * Ecological Monitoring Experts * Mapping Experts * Community engagement   Specific TOR for all these posts will be designed upon inception. |
| Short Term National Consultants | Refer to for more detail | The project will procure in the national consultancy market several key skills for enhancing implementation. These consultants will assist the project teams with several key outputs under the project, indicatively as follows:   1. Land and Water (mostly at sites): 2. Forestry (mostly at sites) 3. Legal, Policy 4. Institutional 5. Public finance and planning 6. Evaluator   TOR for the evaluator will be in accordance with UNDP EEG standards.  The remainder of the consultants will focus on the following key project outputs:   |  |  | | --- | --- | | a) and b) | 3.1 Organized communities, farmer associations, and associations of artisanal fishermen have the capacity to engage in biodiversity friendly income-generating activities as an alternative to resource degrading ones  3.2 Local governments, resource institutions, private operators, NGOs and others participate actively and collaboratively in biodiversity conservation in PAs and MPAs through the established Advisory Councils for the project’s target PAs and MPAs  3.3 The integration of PA/MPA planning and strategizing into local development frameworks ensure that sectoral development at the local level is more harmonious with the conservation objectives and activities of PAs and MPAs | | c); d) and e) | 1.1 The PA Autonomous Authority (PAAA) is established  1.2 PA planning and management tools developed: (i) National PA Zoning Plan; (ii) National PA Strategy; and (iii) National PA Business Plan.  1.3 The new PAAA is cooperating effectively with relevant institutions for sustainable resource management |   Specific TOR for all these posts will be designed upon inception or when applicable, according to the project’s needs. |
| **International / Regional and global recruitment** | | |
| PA planning and eco-tourism specialist | 6 months throughout the project duration | The project will engage a medium term international consultant throughout its duration on a retainer basis (amounting to six months in total) to support the PA planning process (years 1 - 3 of the project). The consultant will work in collaboration with the core and site/IWO teams and bring into the PA planning process in Cape Verde advice based on the best international practice.  The consultant will focus on the following key project outputs:  1.2 PA planning and management tools have been developed and are under implementation, including (i) National PA Zoning Plan; (ii) National PA Strategy; and (iii) National PA Business Plan  1.4 Quantitative data on climate change and carbon sequestration is effectively informing the design and implementation of the National PA strategy  2.1 Management and business plans have been prepared and implemented in a participatory fashion in 4 terrestrial PAs and in 3 MPAs involving communities, private land owners and tourism operators, among others  2.2 Island-Wide Conservation Strategy Plans have been implemented and are supporting the establishment of all of the MPAs on Sal and Boavista Islands  3.1 Organized communities, farmer associations, and associations of artisanal fishermen have the capacity to engage in biodiversity friendly income-generating activities as an alternative to resource degrading ones  3.2 Local governments, resource institutions, private operators, NGOs and others participate actively and collaboratively in biodiversity conservation in PAs and MPAs through the established Advisory Councils for the project’s target PAs and MPAs  3.3 The integration of PA/MPA planning and strategizing into local development frameworks ensure that sectoral development at the local level is more harmonious with the conservation objectives and activities of PAs and MPAs  Specific TOR for all these posts will be designed upon inception. |
| Short Term International Consultants | Refer to for more detail | The project will procure in the international consultancy market several key skills for enhancing implementation. These consultants will assist the project teams with several key outputs under the project, indicatively as follows:   1. PA Finance 2. PA Planning and Management 3. Invasive Alien Species Specialist 4. Evaluator   TOR for the evaluator will be in accordance with UNDP EEG standards.  The remainder of the consultants will focus on the following key project outputs:   |  |  | | --- | --- | | a) | 1.2 PA planning and management tools developed: […] National PA Business Plan  2.1 Management and business plans have been prepared and implemented in a participatory fashion in 4 terrestrial PAs and in 3 MPAs involving communities, private land owners and tourism operators, among others  2.2 Island-Wide Conservation Strategy Plans have been implemented and are supporting the establishment of all of the MPAs on Sal and Boavista Islands | | b) | 1.2 PA planning and management tools developed: (i) National PA Zoning Plan; (ii) National PA Strategy; and (iii) National PA Business Plan.  2.2 Island-Wide Conservation Strategy Plans  2.3 Ecological monitoring systems  2.4 Exotic species are under management and IAS are under sustained control  2.5 A Fisheries Management Plan is under implementation, as a result of cooperation agreements between the Directorate of Fisheries and the Island-Wide Office, at all MPA sites  3.1 Organized communities, farmer associations, and associations of artisanal fishermen have the capacity to engage in biodiversity friendly income-generating activities as an alternative to resource degrading ones  3.2 Local governments, resource institutions, private operators, NGOs and others participate actively and collaboratively in biodiversity conservation in PAs and MPAs through the established Advisory Councils for the project’s target PAs and MPAs  3.3 The integration of PA/MPA planning and strategizing into local development frameworks ensure that sectoral development at the local level is more harmonious with the conservation objectives and activities of PAs and MPAs | | c) | 2.4 Exotic species are under management and IAS are under sustained control in target terrestrial PAs  International experience will be sought for trying out various methods cost them and evaluate them and help DGA/PAAA devise a strategy for the fight against IAS. |   Specific TOR for all these posts will be designed upon inception or when applicable, according to the project’s needs. |

Table 12. Overview of Project Teams by Financier

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  |  | **GEF** | **Gov** | **#** | **at $** | **per** | **duration throughout project** | | **total** |
| **Project Core** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| N | National Coord | x |  | 1 | 40,000 | year | 4 | years | 160,000 |
| I | CTA | x |  | 1 | 90,000 | year | 2 | years | 180,000 |
| N | Communications expert | x |  | 1 | 30,000 | year | 3 | years | 90,000 |
| N | (Socio) Economist | x |  | 1 | 30,000 | year | 3 | years | 90,000 |
| N | Marine biologist | x |  | 1 | 30,000 | year | 3 | years | 90,000 |
| N | Botanist | x |  | 1 | 30,000 | year | 3 | years | 90,000 |
| N | Land-use planning and forestry | x |  | 1 | 30,000 | year | 3 | years | 90,000 |
| N | M&E and reporting officer | x |  | 1 | 30,000 | year | 3 | years | 90,000 |
| I | PA planning and eco-tourism specialist | x |  | 1 | 80,000 | year | 0.5 | years | 40,000 |
| N | Finance and HR |  | x | 1 | 20,000 | year | 4 | years | 80,000 |
| **Site Level** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| N | Site managers | x |  | 2 | 30,000 | year | 4 | years | 240,000 |
| N | IWO managers | x |  | 2 | 30,000 | year | 4 | years | 240,000 |
| N | Community engagement |  | x | 4 | 20,000 | year | 3.5 | years | 280,000 |
| N | Ecological monitoring | x |  | 4 | 20,000 | year | 3.5 | years | 280,000 |
| N | Mapping | x |  | 2 | 30,000 | year | 3 | years | 180,000 |
| I | Volunteers |  | x | 5 | 20,000 | year | 1 | years | 100,000 |
| **Support** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| N | Drivers |  | x | 5 | 8,000 | year | 4 | years | 160,000 |
| **Short term international consultants** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| I | PA Finance | x |  | 1 | 3,000 | week | 8 | weeks | 24,000 |
| I | PA Planning and Management | x |  | 1 | 3,000 | week | 12 | weeks | 36,000 |
| I | Invasive Alien Species Specialist | x |  | 0 | 3,000 | week | 8 | weeks | 24,000 |
| I | Evaluator | x |  | 1 | 3,000 | week | 10 | weeks | 30,000 |
| **Short term national consultants** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| N | Land and Water (mostly at sites) | x |  | 1 | 1,000 | week | 24 | weeks | 24,000 |
| N | Forestry (mostly at sites) | x |  | 1 | 1,000 | week | 24 | weeks | 24,000 |
| N | Legal, Policy |  | x | 1 | 1,000 | week | 16 | weeks | 16,000 |
| N | Institutional |  | x | 1 | 1,000 | week | 10 | weeks | 10,000 |
| N | Public finance and planning |  | x | 1 | 1,000 | week | 10 | weeks | 10,000 |
| N | Evaluator | x |  | 1 | 1,000 | week | 10 | weeks | 10,000 |

Note: I = International; N = National.

## PART IV: Stakeholder Involvement Plan

1. The PPG phase included consultations with the project’s key stakeholders at the national and local levels. Field trips were carried out to Sal, Boavista, Fogo, Santo Antão and São Vicente, where all project sites were visited. Local authorities, NGOs community organisations and private sector operators were presented to the project proposal. Two workshops at the national level were also held and the project was thoroughly discussed. In addition, several bilateral meetings were held, mostly with donors and key stakeholders who could not attend the workshops. Generally, project design was a highly participatory process, in line with UNDP’s and GEF’s requirements. Refer to for more detail on the PPG.
2. A full Stakeholder Involvement Plan remains however to be prepared upon project inception and this is already an identified activity. For the sake of information and reference, the project’s key stakeholders are listed in and a detailed analysis is contained in . Furthermore, below outlines the coordination with other related initiatives.

Table 13. Coordination and Collaboration between the Project and Related Initiatives

| **Initiatives / Interventions** | **How collaboration with the project will be ensured** |
| --- | --- |
| UNDP/GEF project *“Integrated participatory ecosystem management in and around protected areas – Phase I”* | The project is reaching its end and is being evaluated (report due in 2 weeks from date of submission of this PRODOC). The results of the evaluation and all of the lessons learned throughout the Phase I Project implementation were actively applied in the design of this project. It is also expected that some of the staff who were involved in the Phase I Project and have been considerably capacitated will continue to be engaged in PA management under this project. |
| UNDP/GEF LDCF funded project *“Building adaptive capacity and resilience to climate change in the water sector in Cape Verde”* | The project is expected to be soon approved and will focus on implementing priority adaptation option identified in Cape Verde’s National Adaptation Programme of Action (NAPA), the key priority being the water sector. One of the project’s site in on Santo Antão close to the PAs on the same island (see map in ). Both projects can share offices on Santo Antão. Another key are of collaboration will be the sharing of the project CTA. Each of the projects will finance 2 years of the CTA’s assignment and the incumbent will provide support to both projects. |
| UNDP/GEF SPA project *“Responding to Coastline Change and Its Human Dimensions in West Africa through Integrated Coastal Area Management”* | The regional SPA project, aims to pave the way for adaptation measures that deal with coastal zones issues through regional collaboration. On pilot sites the regional project is dealing with the issue of saline intrusion in the underground water table. The SPA and his BD project will look for synergies with respect to nature-based adaptation issues and sharing knowledge on anthropogenic impacts on sensitive coastal environments. MADRRM (through DGA) and the National Institute of Meteorology and Geophysics (INMG) will ensure coordination through the respective project management units. |
| Several other interventions lead by MADRRM and DGA | Coordination with respect to on-the-ground interventions and policy issues will be done at the PSC level. |
| Austrian Development Cooperation | As a project co-financier, Austria will be a member of the PSC. Austria provides budget support to the environment sector in Cape Verde and is monitoring together with UNDP the implementation of PANA II. |
| Spain Cooperation | Spain is also a project co-financier and will be a member of the PSC. Their support to and insight into issues of the fisheries sector will be very important for the project. This project will coordinate closely the implementation Output 2.5 (A Fisheries Management Plan is under implementation, as a result of cooperation agreements between the Directorate of Fisheries and the Island-Wide Office, at all MPA sites) with the Spanish partners. The long standing collaboration with the government of the Canary Islands on terrestrial biodiversity management is also expected to continue. |
| US Peace Corps | Peace Corps Volunteers are expected to be deployed to sites during project implementation and represents co-financing in the form of technical support to the project. Volunteer profiles will likely include environmental educators, engineers, water experts, land use planners etc. Peace Corps in Cape Verde are members of the PSC. |
| WWF Programme on Marine Biodiversity, also under the PRCMMulti-country UNDP-implemented project “*Integrating climate change risks into national development processes and UN country programming for the achievement of the Millennium Development Goals*” (financed by the government of Spain). | WWF Cape Verde project “Marine and Coastal Conservation Project” (Phase II, 2008-2010), focuses on strengthening marine PAs (primarily on the island of Maio) through improved national legislation, environmental planning and management capacity building, protection of selected key species and habitat, and mechanisms for sharing of information and lessons learned with other marine and coastal conservation projects in West Africa. Funds for an additional phase are being sought from the EU. |
| Small Grants Programme in Cape Verde | The SGP is being launched in 2009. Collaboration will be sought particularly with respect to Outcome 3 of the project, under which a micro-grant scheme can complement and scale up initiatives started under the SPG. There will be extensive cross-fertilisation between both programmes. |
| The establishment of a National Centre for Climatic Modelling and Forecast (*Centro Nacional de Previsão e Modelação Climática*) with USAID funds through MADRRM; and of the National Network for Climatic and Meterological Observation (*Rede Nacional de Observação Metereologica e Climática*) financed with MADRRM’s own funds | Activities under this project’s Output 1.4 (Quantitative data on climate change and carbon sequestration is effectively informing the design and implementation of the National PA strategy) will be carried out in collaboration with the mentioned climate change modelling initiative. MADRRM and National Institute of Meteorology and Geophysics will be the focal points, so as to ensure coordination through the respective project management units. |
| Multi-country UNDP-implemented project “*Integrating climate change risks into national development processes and UN country programming for the achievement of the Millennium Development Goals*” (financed by the government of Spain). | The multi-country project will pilot measures to develop capacity in eight countries to integrate climate change risk considerations into UN country programming, development planning and policy-making. Collaboration is already in-built in planned activities. |
| SPWA – the GEF’s Program in West Africa: Sub-component on Biodiversity | The umbrella programme was approved within the GEF’s Work Programme of November 2008 with 20 PIFs under it (13 were still to be prepared by then and most of them are approved now). This project is part of the programme and it is the only one dealing with MPAs. Synergies with other UNDP/GEF projects under the programme (many of which are SO1 projects) are being actively ensured through the UNDP EEG Regional Coordination Unit, as well as synergies with project from other agencies. The UNEP regional project (Evolution of PA Systems in regards to climatic, institutional, social and economic conditions in the West Africa Region) may be of particular interest with respect to climate change modelling at the regional level. |
| Several GEF projects that are part of Cape Verde’s portfolio | This project is actively building on the results of several GEF projects implemented in Cape Verde in the past 8-10 years. With respect to the marine environment, two International Waters projects are worth mentioning: (1) FAO's “*Protection of the Canary Current Large Marine Ecosystem (LME)*”; and (2) UNDP/UNEP's “Implementing Integrated Water Resource and Wastewater Management in Atlantic and Indian Ocean SIDS”. With respect to the first one, synergies will be sought through the PRCM and for the second, through UNDP’s EEG Regional Coordination Unit. |

# Project Annexes

**Annex 1. Overview of PAs and MPAs and Key Features of Selected Areas**

**Annex 2. Geographical Location of Selected PAs and MPAs (included as attached file)**

**Annex 3. Results of the UNDP Capacity Development Scorecard for PA Management**

**Annex 4. Financial Analysis of Protected Areas**

**Annex 5. Ecotourism and Livelihoods Alternative Analysis for selected PAs**

**Annex 6. GEF4 Complete Tracking Tools**

*Containing:*

PA Management Effectiveness Tracking Tool – “METT”

Section One: Project General Information

Name of reviewers completing tracking tool and completion dates

Project coverage in hectares

Protected areas that are the target of the GEF intervention

Section Two: Management Effectiveness Tracking Tool for Protected Areas

Reporting Progress at Protected Area Sites: Data Sheet 1 -

Section Three: UNDP’s Financial Sustainability Scorecard for National Systems of PAs

Financial Scorecard – Part I – Overall Financial Status of the Protected Areas System

Financial Scorecard – Part II – Assessing Elements of the Financing System

Financial Scorecard – Part III – Scoring and Measuring Progress

**Annex 7. Detailed Stakeholder Analysis**

**Annex 8. Overview of PPG Studies**

**Annex 9. Calculation Basis for the Incremental Cost Analysis**

## Annex 1. Overview of PAs and MPAs and Key Features of Selected Areas

Table 14. Overview of legally defined PAs and MPAs of Cape Verde

| **Island** | **Designation** | **Designation (acronym)** | **PA / MPA name** | **Exclusively terrestrial PAs** | **Marine and coastal PAs – i.e. MPAs** | **Land surface (ha) - PAs and MPAs** | **Seascape (ha) - MPAs** | **TOTAL (ha)** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Ilha de Boavista | Protected Landscape | P P | Monte Caçador e Pico Forcado |  |  | 3 365.02 |  | 3 365.02 |
| Integrated Natural Reserve | RNI | Ilhéu de Baluarte |  |  | 7.65 |  | 7.65 |
| Integrated Natural Reserve | RNI | Ilhéu dos Passaros |  |  | 0.68 |  | 0.68 |
| Integrated Natural Reserve | RNI | Ilhéu de Curral Velho |  |  | 0.51 |  | 0.51 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Ponta do Sol |  |  | 456.79 |  | 456.79 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Boa Esperança |  |  | 3 130.29 |  | 3 130.29 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Morro de Areia |  |  | 2 100.24 |  | 2 100.24 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Tartaruga |  |  | 1 766.42 |  | 1 766.42 |
| Natural Park | PN | PN do Norte |  |  | 8 964.64 | 7 524.45 | 16 489.09 |
| Natural Monument | MN | Ilhéu de Sal-Rei |  |  | 89.98 |  | 89.98 |
| Natural Monument | MN | Monte Santo António |  |  | 457.91 |  | 457.91 |
| Natural Monument | MN | Monte Estancia |  |  | 763.30 |  | 763.30 |
| Protected Landscape | P P | Curral Velho |  |  | 1 636.87 |  | 1 636.87 |
| Natural Monument | MN | Rocha Estancia |  |  | 253.44 |  | 253.44 |
| Ilha de Maio | Natural Reserve | RN | Casas Velhas |  |  | 137.95 |  | 137.95 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Terras Salgadas |  |  | 1 980.40 | 3 868.47 | 5 849.87 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Lagoa Cimidor |  |  | 50.63 |  | 50.63 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Praia do Morro |  |  | 21.85 |  | 21.85 |
| Natural Park | PN | Barreiro e Figueira |  |  | 1 079.00 |  | 1 079.00 |
| Protected Landscape | P P | Salinas de Porto Inglés |  |  | 337.00 |  | 337.00 |
| Protected Landscape | P P | Monte Penoso e Monte Branco |  |  | 1 117.80 |  | 1 117.80 |
| Protected Landscape | P P | Monte Santo António |  |  | 881.73 |  | 881.73 |
| Ilha de Santa Luzia | Integrated Natural Reserve | RN | Santa Luzia |  |  | 3 500.00 |  | 3 500.00 |
| Ilha de Santiago | Natural Park | PN | Serra Malagueta |  |  | 1,200.00 |  | 1,200.00 |
| Natural Park | PN | Serra do Pico de Antónia |  |  | 0.00 |  | 0.00 |
| Ilha de Santo Antão | Natural Park | PN | Morroços |  |  | 671.00 |  | 671.00 |
| Protected Landscape | P P | Pombas |  |  | 0.00 |  | 0.00 |
| Natural Park | PN | Topo da Coroa |  |  | 3 500.00 |  | 0.00 |
| Natural Park | PN | Cova/Paúl/RªTorre |  |  | 3 217.00 |  | 3 217.00 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Cruzinha |  |  | 1 117.80 |  | 1 117.80 |
| Ilha de São Nicolau | Natural Reserve | RN | Monte do Alto das Cabaças |  |  | 0.00 |  | 0.00 |
| Natural Park | PN | Monte Gordo |  |  | 2,500.00 |  | 2,500.00 |
| Natural Park | PN | Monte Verde |  |  | 800.00 |  | 800.00 |
| Ilha do Fogo | Natural Park | PN | Chã das Caldeiras |  |  | 8 468.51 |  | 8 468.51 |
| Ilha do Sal | Protected Landscape | P P | Salinas Pedra Lume e Cagarral |  |  | 806.96 |  | 806.96 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Costa da Fragata |  |  | 351.68 |  | 351.68 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Ponta do Sinó |  |  | 89.28 |  | 89.28 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Rabo de Junco |  |  | 151.21 |  | 151.21 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Serra Negra |  |  | 335.90 |  | 335.90 |
| Natural Monument | MN | Morrinho do Açúcar |  |  | 5.87 |  | 5.87 |
| Natural Monument | MN | Morrinho do Filho |  |  | 13.00 |  | 13.00 |
| Protected Landscape | P P | Monte Grande |  |  | 1 320.76 |  | 1 320.76 |
| Protected Landscape | P P | Salinas de Santa Maria |  |  | 78.44 |  | 78.44 |
| Natural Reserve | RN | Marinha Baía da Murdeira |  |  |  | 2 066.63 | 2 066.63 |
| Protected Landscape | P P | Buracona-Ragona |  |  | 518.71 |  | 518.71 |
| Ilhéus | Integrated Natural Reserve | RN | Ilhéus de Branco e Raso |  |  | 1 000.00 |  | 1 000.00 |
| Integrated Natural Reserve | RN | Ilhéu do Rombo |  |  | 450.00 |  | 450.00 |

Table 15. Key Features and Land Uses within and around the Project’s Terrestrial Sites

| **Statistics and Land use** *(2003)* | **Monte Verde** | **Morroços** | **Cova, Paúl, Ribeira da Torre** | **Chã das Caldeiras** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Size of the area | 800 ha | 671 ha | 3,217 ha | 8,469 ha |
| Households within the area *(up-to-date data)* | < 5 | < 10 | \* | 150 |
| Households using the area | 35 | \* | 1595 | 275 |
| Area of croplands | 182 ha | \* | 1395 ha | 800 ha |
| Area of Forest | - | 235 ha | 432,6 ha | 250 ha |
| Area of Rangelands | - | 336 ha | 5 ha | 1,500 ha |
| Area of degraded Land | \* | 100 ha | 1245 ha | 40% |
| Area under Tree Plantation | 5 m2 | 235 ha | 5 ha | \* |
| Invasive alien species | + +  Fulcraea Lantana | ++  Fulcraea, Lantana | ++  Fulcraea, Lantana | ++  Fulcraea, Lantana & Cuscuta |
| Water bodies | - | Yes | Yes | Only springs |
| # of Cattle (goats/sheep) | \* | 119 | 11494 | 7.000 goats |
| Fuel wood Consumption | - | 10kg/day/family | 250T/year | Reduced strongly during the last years |
| Small Industry | - | Cheese, tourism, | Cheese  Sweets. | Wine, tourism, handicraft |
| Average rainfall (1991-2000) | 107.7 mm | 455.2 mm | 464.2mm | 389 mm |

Notes: - No information available / \* Activity does not exist

## Annex 2. Geographical Location of Selected PAs and MPAs (included as a separate file)



## Annex 3. Results of the UNDP Capacity Development Scorecard for PA Management

Table 16. Summary Results of the UNDP Capacity Development Scorecard for PA Management

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Strategic Areas of Support** | **Systemic** | | | **Institutional** | | | **Individual** | | | **Average %** |
| Project Scores | Total possible score | % achieved | Project Scores | Total possible score | % achieved | Project Scores | Total possible score | % achieved |
| (1) Capacity to conceptualize and develop sectoral and cross-sectoral policy and regulatory frameworks | 2 | 6 | 33% | 0 | 3 | 0% | N/A | N/A | N/A | 17% |
| (2) Capacity to formulate, operationalise and implement sectoral and cross-sectoral programmes and projects | 3 | 9 | 33% | 10 | 27 | 37% | 6 | 12 | 50% | 40% |
| (3) Capacity to mobilize and manage partnerships, including with the civil society and the private sector | 2 | 6 | 33% | 2 | 6 | 33% | 2 | 3 | 67% | 44% |
| (4) Technical skills related specifically to the requirements of the SPs and associated Conventions | 1 | 3 | 33% | 2 | 3 | 67% | 1 | 3 | 33% | 44% |
| (5) Capacity to monitor, evaluate and report at the sector and project levels | 1 | 6 | 17% | 4 | 6 | 67% | 1 | 3 | 33% | 39% |
| **TOTAL Score and average for %'s** | **9** | **30** | **30%** | **18** | **45** | **41%** | **10** | **21** | **46%** | **37%** |

Table 17. Numeric Scores for the UNDP Capacity Development Scorecard for PA Management

| **Strategic Area of Support** | **Capacity Level** | **Outcome** | **Numeric Indicator Score** | **Outcome Indicator** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **1. Capacity to conceptualize and formulate policies, legislations, strategies and programmes** | *Systemic* | The protected area agenda is being effectively championed / driven forward | **1** | There are some persons or institutions actively pursuing a protected area agenda but they have little effect or influence |
| There is a strong and clear legal mandate for the establishment and management of protected areas | **1** | There is a partial legal framework for protected areas but it has many inadequacies |
| *Institutional* | There is an institution responsible for protected areas able to strategize and plan | **0** | Protected area institutions have no plans or strategies |
| **2. Capacity to implement policies, legislation, strategies and programmes** | *Systemic* | There are adequate skills for protected area planning and management | **1** | Some skills exist but in largely insufficient quantities to guarantee effective planning and management |
| There are protected area systems | **1** | Protected area system is patchy both in number and geographical coverage and has many gaps in terms of representativeness |
| There is a fully transparent oversight authority for the protected areas institutions | **1** | There is some oversight, but only indirectly and in an untransparent manner |
| *Institutional* | Protected area institutions are effectively led | **0** | Protected area institutions have a total lack of leadership |
| Protected areas have regularly updated, participatorially prepared, comprehensive management plans | **2** | Most Protected Areas have management plans though some are old, not participatorially prepared or are less than comprehensive |
| Human resources are well qualified and motivated | **2** | HR in general reasonably qualified, but many lack in motivation, or those that are motivated are not sufficiently qualified. |
| Management plans are implemented in a timely manner effectively achieving their objectives | **1** | Management plans are poorly implemented and their objectives are rarely met |
| Protected area institutions are able to adequately mobilize sufficient quantity of funding, human and material resources to effectively implement their mandate | **0** | Protected area institutions typically are severely underfunded and have no capacity to mobilize sufficient resources |
| Potected area institutions are effectively managed, efficiently deploying their human, financial and other resources to the best effect | **1** | Institutional management is largely ineffective and does not deploy efficiently the resources at its disposal |
| Protected area institutions are highly transparent, fully audited, and publicly accountable | **2** | Protected area institutions are regularly audited and there is a fair degree of public accountability but the system is not fully transparent |
| There are legally designated protected area insititutions with the authority to carry out their mandate | **1** | There are one or more institutions or agencies dealing with protected areas but roles and responsibilities are unclear and there are gaps and overlaps in the arrangements |
| Protected areas are effectively protected | **1** | Some enforcement of regulations but largely ineffective and external threats remain active |
| *Individual* | Individuals are able to advance and develop professionally | **1** | Career tracks are weak and training possibilities are few and not managed transparently |
| Individuals are appropriately skilled for their jobs | **2** | Individuals are reasonably skilled but could further improve for optimum match with job requirement |
| Individuals are highly motivated | **2** | Many individuals are motivated but not all |
| There are appropriate systems of training, mentoring, and learning in place to maintain a continuous flow of new staff | **1** | Some mechanisms exist but unable to develop enough and unable to provide the full range of skills needed |
| **3. Capacity to engage and build consensus among all stakeholders** | *Systemic* | Protected areas have the political commitment they require | **1** | Some political will exists, but is not strong enough to make a difference |
| Protected areas have the public support they require | **1** | There is limited support for protected areas |
| *Institutional* | Protected area institutions are mission oriented | **1** | Institutional mission poorly defined and generally not known and internalized at all levels |
| Protected area institutions can establish the partnerships needed to achieve their objectives | **1** | Some partnerships in place but significant gaps and existing partnerships achieve little |
| *Individual* | Individuals carry appropriate values, integrity and attitudes | **2** | Many individuals carry appropriate values and integrity, but not all |
| **4. Capacity to mobilize information and knowledge** | *Systemic* | Protected area institutions have the information they need to develop and monitor strategies and action plans for the management of the protected area system | **1** | Some information exists, but is of poor quality, is of limited usefulness, or is very difficult to access |
| *Institutional* | Protected area institutions have the information needed to do their work | **2** | Much information is readily available, mostly of good quality, but there remain some gaps both in quality and quantity |
| *Individual* | Individuals working with protected areas work effectively together as a team | **1** | Individuals interact in limited way and sometimes in teams but this is rarely effective and functional |
| **5. Capacity to monitor, evaluate, report and learn** | *Systemic* | Protected area policy is continually reviewed and updated | **0** | There is no policy or it is old and not reviewed regularly |
| Society monitors the state of protected areas | **1** | There is some dialogue going on, but not in the wider public and restricted to specialized circles |
| *Institutional* | Institutions are highly adaptive, responding effectively and immediately to change | **2** | Institutions tend to adapt in response to change but not always very effectively or with some delay |
| Institutions have effective internal mechanisms for monitoring, evaluation, reporting and learning | **2** | Reasonable mechanisms for monitoring, evaluation, reporting and learning are in place but are not as strong or comprehensive as they could be |
| *Individual* | Individuals are adaptive and continue to learn | **1** | Performance is irregularly and poorly measured and there is little use of feedback |

## Annex 4. Financial Analysis of Protected Areas

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **FINANCIAL SCORECARD – PART II Summarised – ASSESSING ELEMENTS OF THE FINANCING SYSTEM See Part II of the GEF4 Tracking Tools () for details** | **Score for Cape Verde PA System** | **Total Possible Score** | **%** |
| **Component 1 – Legal, regulatory and institutional frameworks** | **22** | **79** | **29%** |
| Element 1 – Legal, policy and regulatory support for revenue generation by Pas | 1 | 6 | 17% |
| Element 2 - Legal, policy and regulatory support for revenue retention and sharing within the PA system | 0 | 9 | 0% |
| Element 3 - Legal and regulatory conditions for establishing Funds (trust funds, sinking funds or revolving funds) | 0 | 9 | 0% |
| Element 4 - Legal, policy and regulatory support for alternative institutional arrangements for PA management to reduce cost burden to gvt. | 0 | 12 | 0% |
| Element 5 - National PA financing strategies | 10 | 13 | 77% |
| Element 6 - Economic valuation of protected area systems (ecosystem services, tourism based employment etc) | 1 | 6 | 17% |
| Element 7 - Improved government budgeting for PA systems | 6 | 6 | 100% |
| Element 8 - Clearly defined institutional responsibilities for PA management and financing | 1 | 3 | 33% |
| Element 9 - Well-defined staffing requirements, profiles and incentives at site and system level | 3 | 15 | 20% |
| **Component 2 – Business planning and tools for cost-effective management** | **5** | **61** | **8%** |
| Element 1 – PA site-level business planning | 5 | 18 | 28% |
| Element 2 - Operational, transparent and useful accounting and auditing systems | 0 | 12 | 0% |
| Element 3 - Systems for monitoring and reporting on financial management performance | 0 | 12 | 0% |
| Element 4 - Methods for allocating funds across individual PA sites | 0 | 4 | 0% |
| Element 5 - Training and support networks to enable PA managers to operate more cost-effectively | 0 | 15 | 0% |
| **Component 3 – Tools for revenue generation** | **6** | **57** | **11%** |
| Element 1 - Number and variety of revenue sources used across the PA system | 0 | 9 | 0% |
| Element 2 - Setting and establishment of user fees across the PA system | 3 | 15 | 20% |
| Element 3 - Effective fee collection systems | 1 | 3 | 33% |
| Element 4 - Marketing and communication strategies for revenue generation mechanisms | 1 | 3 | 33% |
| Element 5 - Operational PES schemes for PAs[4] | 0 | 12 | 0% |
| Element 6 - Operational concessions within PAs | 1 | 12 | 8% |
| Element 7 - PA training programs on revenue generation mechanisms | 0 | 3 | 0% |
| **Total Score** | **33** | **197** | **17%** |

**An extensive analysis of financial program and management systems and capacities at the level of the PA institution and individual PAs/MPAs was been carried out during PPG. The full report is available only in French. A summary with the main conclusions of the report is provided below.**

*Tax policy*

The current national policy promotes charges/payments as function of services provided by the PA or simply rights of entry. There is no public-private partnership yet in the PA management.

*Payment for ecosystem services in the market*

Ecosystem services are clearly perceived by the population. However, these are not defined as such even though they are clearly linked to social and economic activity. The production factors of the land and forests are thought as common goods since they are ubiquitous, such that the population does not assign to these factors a value. It is not surprising, therefore, that payment for these factors is rare, with the exception of taxes. The current approach promotes the notion of assigning a market value to these production factors derived from ecosystems. This is because in certain cases, these services are becoming rare; and in other social and economic contexts, their demand maybe increasing.

To this end, it is essential to enhance the organization of forest resource exploitation. Thus all the activities associated with the different products and services should be developed in contact with professional commercial agents who will give a value to these commodities.

In this manner, those involved in eco-tourism [sight-seeing besides beaches], wildlife, wood production for fire and industry [artisanal and otherwise] will receive training and, in turn, will acquire business permits. This will allow them to sell their products in the market to either tourists or local consumers. Ultimately, this will create employment, income distribution and tax revenue for the State and municipalities. This constitutes a vital option for poverty reduction.

*National Budget*

In order for the environment to become a priority sector, the State’s engagement must extend beyond the advocacy level. It is essential to demonstrate to the State that ecology can contribute to national revenue. This should stimulate the State during the budgeting process not only to maintain the required budget lines but also to increase the allocations for ecology.

To this end, specific studies will be conducted to show that the regulatory function and the cultural and scientific services of the PAs will lead to value added of the PA. This in turn will be reflected in the sectoral and national GDP.

## Annex 5. Ecotourism and Livelihoods Alternative Analysis for selected PAs

1. Protected Areas and Tourism

The protected area network system of natural parks, marine reserves, protected landscapes and other designated areas creates the basis for the ecotourism / nature tourism in Cape Verde that makes up its domestic and international tourist industries. The interest factors provided by the country’s PA network encompasses a number of opportunities for wildlife viewing such as turtles, whales and birds, and for landscape viewing e.g. the volcanoes on Fogo or the Viana Desert Boavista. The PAs also provide some of the core areas for developing low impact leisure activities, both active and passive, such as hiking, paragliding and windsurfing, provided they are undertaken in a responsible manner, at appropriate places and during appropriate times of the year.

Tourism development in the protected areas can be subdivided into three specific groups:

1. Recreation and education / interpretation experiences promoted and managed by the protected area managers. Those who use these services consist of groups, independent casual users, or people seeking specific requirements such as hiking or bird watching.
2. Visits and tours arranged by tourism service providers, such as tour operators, NGOs, resorts etc.
3. Community based and owned tourism activities based on the protected area’s natural attributes, which may or may not be successfully promoted by the protected area’s management.

The second National Environmental Action Plan 2004 – 2014[[49]](#footnote-50) states that the tourism sector will take into account the opportunities, specific features and potential that each island offers for the development of a diverse and sustainable tourism product, which will provide the basis for local socio-economic development. In order to diversify the tourism product, ecotourism will be promoted, as will the traditional sun-sand-sea tourism and ‘mountain’ holidays. The PANA II affirms that from 2007 onwards at least 50% of the average annual tourism increased through eco-tourism.

Under the plan, the tourism industry will work towards:

1. Improving environmental control within tourist areas
2. Preserving the biodiversity of Cape Verde from damage by tourism developments.
3. Improving environmental control within the tourism zones.
4. Integrating environmental training into the education of tourism managers and tourist guides.
5. Reducing the impact of tourist developments and constructions on the environment and natural resources.
6. Reducing the impact of waste produced by the tourist industry i.e. waste management and water recycling.

Within the framework of the PANA II a draft plan for ‘environmental tourism’ was elaborated (Volume III.6). This plan has not been adopted.

2. Impacts of Tourism Development

In its current form, the ‘mass tourism’ model promoted by the Government of Cape Verde is rapidly consuming Cape Verde’s natural resources on both Sal and Boavista, and provides few returns compared to the investment made. Rapid development is occurring on both islands, but both physical and social infrastructure is struggling to keep up. Numerous negative effects are occurring which can clearly be seen on Sal. These effects range from the destruction of turtle beaches and sand dune systems, water shortages to a housing shortage and an increase in prostitution and drug use. Although Boavista is benefitting from master planning work undertaken by the Sociedade de Desenvolvimento Turistico das Ilas de Boavista e Maio SA, development on the ground has only recently begun, and both the physical and the social infrastructure systems are finding it difficult to keep pace.

A great concern has been expressed both from the public and private sectors concerning the shortfalls in the planning system, especially those related to major tourism investments. All developments in Cape Verde are subject to Environmental Impact Assessments (EIA) as determined by the Decreto-Lei n° 29/2006 law, however the effectiveness of implementing the EIA legislation is under doubt along with a range of associated problems including poor construction design and use of low quality building products, poor silting of buildings, poor development control by authorities and the flouting of regulations by developers. This results in:

* Non adherence to the EIA.
* The boundaries of protected areas being ignored and land within protected areas being sold.
* Legal 80 metre coastal setbacks constantly being ignored and developments constructed
* Permissions sought retrospectively after investors have started work, and permissions obtained even when laws and building regulations have been broken.
* The construction of continuous ribbon developments - Continuous lines of tourist related development adjacent to the shoreline (Ribbon Development), as developed in Sal and proposed in the Integral Tourism Development Area (ZDTI) of Boavista, are considered to be both environmentally and socially detrimental, and ultimately inhibit the development of a tourism industry by becoming unattractive to visitors by limiting access and views to the beach and sea. Large portions of the coastline are informally ‘privatized’ by a small minority, to the detriment of the majority of the population, which can ultimately lead to social unrest.
* Natural sea defences being destroyed, damaged or impaired (dune systems, coral reef).
* Unique ecosystems being destroyed or impaired.
* Natural beach and dune recharging being impaired.
* Environmentally damaging tourist activities taking place (quad biking on beaches and dunes).

This recent and rapid development requires large numbers of workers, which has resulted in the immigration of both nationals from other islands and workers from West Africa to Sal and Boavista, in increasingly large numbers, thereby creating major social problems related to a lack of suitable housing and sanitation, a lack of health and educational services, an increase in crime and prostitution and an increase in unemployment etc.

Indirect but serious consequences for the wildlife on Sal and Boavsta have occurred and will continue to occur due to the immigration of construction workers, which is necessary to meet the timescale investors are requiring for project completion. Construction workers are paid low wages and supplement their diets with birds and turtles[[50]](#footnote-51) that they trap and catch. The Tropical Bird *Phaethon aethereus* and the Frigate Bird *Fregata magnificens* are considered to be under particular threat and may become extinct on Boa Vista within a short period of time as the pressures from this activity increases in line with the expansion of development.

3. Protected Areas Development Opportunities

*3.1 Natural Park Cova / Ribeira / Paúl / Torre – Sao Antao*

The Natural Park Cova / Ribeira / Paúl / Torre extends over an area of 3217 ha and encompasses the greater part of the watersheds for the Ribeira Grande, Ribeira Paúl and Ribeira Torre. The highest point in the park is the Lomba das Pedras at 1447 metres. The topography of the park comprises the upper slopes of the park. These comprise a matrix of conservation forest containing predominantly conifer species and small scale agriculture. A public road passes through Porto Novo to Riberia Grande and until recently this was the only route to Riberia Grande. A new coastal route has now replaced this road. A secondary road passes up the valley of Riberia Grande to Escabbecada. The roads up Riberia Torre and R do Paúl cross part way but do not connect with any other roads. The sides of the river canyons are steep and agricultural terraces reach high up the slopes. The park provides a dramatic tourist experience described as “one of the worlds landscape dramas[[51]](#footnote-52)”

The area appears heavily populated (population not known), and population density increases at the lower elevations and closer to the coast as a result of improved access and the improvement of agricultural land quality on the lower slopes. On the higher slopes crops such as maize, English and sweet potato and beans etc are grown. The lower slopes are dominated by sugar cane that is entirely used for grogue production, which has expanded in recent years. As a result, traditional crops such as coffee have been displaced and reduced to only a few hectares. A wide variety of stable crops are grown both for the home and the market. DGASP are promoting fruit production, for example, the production of apples, peaches, quince (marmelo) mangos, figs, bananas etc. Raw fruit and vegetable products cannot be exported to other islands, as crops are affected by the millipede Spinotarsus caboverdus, and as a result this has limited agricultural growth on Sao Antao.

Livestock consists principally of goats, (these are kept both herded and intensively) this sentence doesn’t make sense…maybe it doesn’t need to be included?. Free roaming is rare. Goat products are cheese, milk and meat. A small number of dairy cows are supported on the upper slopes.

In the past, forestation has created forest plantations on the upper slopes; these plantations are primarily and are managed for forest conservation. There are no commercial cuts, but cuts are made for maintenance purposes such as thinning and sanitation. The wood produced by the forest thinning is used for firewood (home), however increasing demand for firewood to fuel large scale grogue production is placing an increasing strain on this resource, as the high volume stills (Alambique) are fuelled by wood and not the traditional sugar cane waste. There are no non-timber crops exploited.

Anecdotal evidence suggests that the territory of the Natural Park is popular as a recreation area for both domestic and international visitors, albeit in low numbers relative to other tourist centres in Cape Verde. The actual numbers of visitors to the area is unknown as there is no specific counting undertaken. However, the rising number of tourist beds located in PA areas points to an increasing local confidence towards investing in providing tourism services. Both Ponta do Sol and Vila Das Pombas (Paúl) are planned locations for up market hotel / apartment developments. Ponta do Sol is likely to receive the majority of this type of development due to its greater availability of level land for construction. The Islands north-east coastline is spectacularly rugged, there are no sandy beaches and the coastline is open to the Atlantic weather and is notably subject to erosion. Opportunities to develop niche marine activities such as diving and fishing are possible. Most opportunities to develop tourist attractions are primarily inland and within the area of the Natural Park. Pressure to develop within both the park area and its buffer zones is increasing with both national and international speculators looking for new hotel sites and accumulating land especially in areas with spectacular views or river valley bottoms where access is considered to be good by investors.

A further threat is the increase in the construction of holiday villas and second homes as the popularity of the area increases with the development of the park. The leaders of the island’s Municipalities are united in their concerns regarding the upsurge of tourism development in the area, however their intentions to control development needs to be carried out. Tourism development is the greatest threat to the area’s landscape integrity and strong developmental control needs to be applied and should be coupled with regulations that provide strict guidelines to control the location, size and architectural design of the construction and to ensure environmental integrity.

The availability of accommodations in the area is developing to meet the increasing numbers of visitors, with recent investments being made in boutique hotels and guesthouses. Opportunities for both the community and park administration exist for the development of a variety of accommodation types to be developed to meet visitor needs. Capacity building within communities to meet the service needs of visitors is required. Types of visitor accommodations suitable for development include:

* Homestay
* Conversion of traditional buildings for self catering accommodations
* Community Ecolodges
* Mountain lodges / camping barns
* Campsites

A range of recreational activities can be developed within the PA area. Mountain walking provides the central attraction for ecotourism activities within the rugged landscapes of Ribeira Grande / do Paúl / de Torre. A guidebook of walks has been jointly published by the municipalities, and the walks have also been reprinted in multi language guidebooks. The walks are unmarked and the services of a local guide are required for safe route finding. Walking holidays in the area are promoted internationally, and a number of small specialist companies have developed holiday itineraries for the area. There is much potential for further development, as the area is extensive and capable of supporting large numbers of hikers. The expansion of the current system of paths is required in order to provide a path system which serves the widest range of visitors and abilities. Paths should range from a few hundred metres through to long routes which can take up to three or four days to complete. A system of mountain lodges and camping barns should be developed along the routes; these can be either community or park owned / operated and would provide simple overnight accommodation to hikers.

A number of paths located close to car parks should be designed for wheelchair access and for the less able or small children. Paths could also be themed and provided with interpretation materials. Possible themes could include a bird trail, an insect trail, a plant trail, a forest trail, or could be themed around local cultural features.

Mountain walking can be expected to be the core activity for the area. Its safe development should therefore be a priority. Required actions are:

* Training of local mountain guides
* Training of local mountain rescue personnel
* Publishing accurate route maps / guides
* Route marking
* Developing shorter / easier routes for people of all abilities
* Promotion of available hiking activities (national and international)

The landscape of the PA provides opportunities for developing a range of active sports, subject to safeguards being set in place and the control of access. Activities include:

* Horse riding
* Canyoning
* Mountain biking
* Climbing / mountaineering
* Hang gliding / para gliding

Because of the dangerous nature of the terrain, the training and equipping of a mountain rescue emergency team will be a paramount requirement for the area to be able to deal with emergency situations as they arise.

Passive activities suitable for promotion include:

1. Camping (equipped sites)
2. Picnicking (equipped sites)
3. Nature trails with interpretation (for children and adults)
4. Grogue Trail
5. Children’s play areas
6. Wildlife hides for animal and bird watching

A grogue trail would be of great interest to visitors of the PA, especially international visitors. The grogue trail will identify a number of grogue makers who undertake their production by traditional and sustainable methods. A map will be produced indicating the locations of participating grogue makers. For a fee, the makers will show tourists around the stills and provide information about the history and manufacture of the drink. The tourists will be able to try each stage of manufacture and purchase bottles to take home.

There are also many good opportunities for the development of crafts using locally sourced raw materials

* Sisal – woven products
* Banana – silk yarn from banana tree fibre. Banana leaf weaving products, such as baskets table mats etc, Banana paper products etc
* Weaving pano (cotton cloth)
* Clay wear
* Stone carving
* Wood carving
* Musical instruments

Support for craft development is required to enable community members to design, make and promote items for sale to visitors. Sale points should be developed within local information centres and in partnership with hotels, guesthouses and other local businesses.

It is foreseen that the Natural Park Cova / Ribeira / Paúl / Torre will become a popular tourist destination. The site has the capacity to support many tourists, but will require the park managers to zone and manage the area in order to ensure appropriate use. The greatest threat to the area is urban expansion and inappropriate design driven by the perceived opportunities tourism brings to an area. Strict development control procedures urgently need to be initiated by the local municipalities and PA administration in order to ensure that further degradation due to inappropriate construction and modern utilitarian design does not continue to erode the quality of the landscape.

*3.2 Morrosos – Sao Antao*

The Natural Park of Morrosos is centrally located on the island of Sao Antao and extends over an area of 671 ha. The Park is difficult to access and is located far enough away from the nearest villages so as not to be unduly affected. There is little evidence to suggest that the park area is likely to be encroached on by incompatible land uses in the foreseeable future.

Because of its isolated location and difficulties in accessing it, the park is considered to be of little tourist value at the present time and will remain undeveloped in this project phase.

As noted above, the location of the park is isolated from the surrounding villages and communities. It is not applicable to develop livelihood activities during this project phase.

*3.3 Natural Park Monte Verde – Sao Vicente*

Monte Verde Natural Park is located ten kilometres south-east of Mindelo and extends over an area estimated at approximately 800 ha. The mountain rises to 725 metres and at the summit there is a large telecommunications centre guarded by soldiers. The primary ecological importance of the Park is its flora, especially its endemic species. The area is also noted for its ornithological interest and in particular the raptor species that reside there.

The lower slopes of Monte Verde are barren, and agricultural activities only start higher up on the east facing slopes as the air becomes moister. The land utilized for agriculture has been divided into short low terraces which extend to the summit. Crops grown are primarily sweet potatoes, ‘english’ potatoes and maize; other crops include varieties of beans and various herbs. Crops are grown for home consumption and / or for sale in the markets of Mindelo. The farmers do not live within Monte Verde but travel from Mindelo and other settlements; small stone and concrete huts provide storage and overnight accommodation during the busy seasons. At the end of each season, livestock is brought onto the mountain to forage the remains of the leftover vegetation. All the land is privately owned, and cultivation is undertaken by both land owners and tenants; an association of Monte Verde farmers has been formed.

Production is rain fed and largely relies on good rains during May – August. Many years there is insufficient water to receive any crop harvest. There is no collection or storage of water for irrigation. A research project in 1987 to collect ‘fog water’ using a vertical tower supporting a total of nine 1m x 0.50m screens collected on average 24 litres/m2/day. Other proposals have been made by various agencies to develop a permanent system in support of agriculture, however to date this has not been undertaken.

Farming activities have reduced the area of natural vegetation to a very small area at the summit, including areas within the telecommunications compound. Pressure continues to be exerted on this area as cultivation pushes higher up the slopes. Ultimately the natural vegetation is likely to disappear altogether unless strict control of farming activities and ecological restoration takes place. Many of the flora species are utilised for medical purposes. Collection of these species also poses a serious threat. The viability of the area as a Natural Park is at the present time seriously threatened unless urgent action is taken to rearrange the farming activities and protect the remaining ‘wild’ areas. Since all the land is within private ownership, this can only be achieved through negotiation with landowners to permanently secure the remaining ‘wild’ areas and additional land for ecological restoration to ensure that a viable area of habitat can be retained (in situ conservation area). Additionally ex-situ conservation activities should be promoted to support conservation activities, provide income support and increase interest for the visitor.

Development of tourism on Sao Vicente and the increase in tourism numbers will place greater pressure on the summit area. Since the island has few natural tourist attractions, Monte Verde will most likely become one of the island’s visitor attractions. Monte Verde is popular with local people and the site is well visited, especially during weekends and holiday periods. There are no facilities at the summit, which is accessed by a single track road which terminates just below the summit itself. There is little room for vehicle parking and many local people either walk up or take taxis. When visitors arrive at the summit, it is usual for them to wander through the remaining natural vegetation or visit the telecommunication centre. The paramount attractions at the summit are the views across the island.

The visitor carrying capacity at the present time is considered to be low. This is in view of the limited available space (physical capacity) and the open access and vulnerability of the natural area (ecological capacity). All of the natural areas currently suffer from destruction created by visitors trampling. This damage is largely unintentional and created by visitors seeking views from the summit.

Monte Verde is rich in medicinal plants, and 18 species are known to grow on the summit. At present there is no formal collection of the plants but they are casually collected by local people. As such, these plants are under threat from over picking and may ultimately disappear if action is not forthcoming.

The development of Monte Verde Natural Park as an ecotourism / nature tourism destination is limited by its physical capacity (space) to accommodate visitors, which is due to the following factors:

1. Limited Access - park access is facilitated by a single track road, and on reaching the summit area there is limited parking.
2. The remaining natural core of habitat is located at the summit. This is vulnerable to trampling and other anthropogenic activities and access to these areas requires strict control.
3. The land is under private ownership and largely cultivated, therefore the public does not have legal access.

The protected area law ‘Decreto Lei No3/2003 lays out the zoning classifications for Natural Parks. The zones for Monte Verde should be applied as:

* Integrated Protection Zone – This is the in situ zone of conservation for the remaining ‘wild area’ and should include areas of ecologically restored habitat. The natural vegetation of each bio-geographical zone should be represented for the whole of Monte Verde by establishing habitat corridors of restored species extending through the cultivated terraces to the lower slopes of Mount Verde to ensure that each of the plant communities is represented within each of the mountains micro climates, thereby creating ecological connections between the lower slopes and the summit.
* Moderate Use Zone – This is an area of ex situ conservation which provides:

1. A resource for the support of conservation activities
2. An accessible area for visitors to view the ‘wild’ habitat in a controlled setting
3. Areas designed for visitor use such as viewing platforms at the summit
4. An educational resource
5. A nursery production resource for habitat rehabilitation

* Traditional Use Zone – These are the cultivated areas where traditional farming practices will continue

Tourism management

1. Visitor Access – The park benefits from a single access point. This provides the opportunity to strictly control the numbers and types of users coming into the park. Because of the limited availability of space for vehicles and parking at the summit and the limited width of the access road, it is proposed that a park and ride system be initiated from the road junction with the Mindelo – Baia das Gatas Road. A car park for cars and coaches should be constructed in the vicinity of the junction, and visitors transferring to aluguers would take the park and ride to the summit. Keeping vehicles off the summit also enhances the general appearance of the summit as a natural area rather than urban extension and allows visitors to use the roadway safely by reducing traffic to a minimum. The park authority should form a contract with a local aluguer company to provide the service. The pay booth for the park, to be located in the car park area or entrance, could be included in the cost of the aluguer.
2. Visitor Circulation – Improvement of visitor circulation within the site is required. The design challenge is to stop all access to the in situ areas whilst allowing access to viewpoints at the summit. The paths should be constructed using visually and ecologically sensitive materials, with an emphasis on local natural materials. All paths should be clearly marked and signposted to direct visitors around the site, and boards or gates which restrict access to the in situ zone should be clearly marked, explaining why they are there.
3. Visitor Activities – Activities will be limited to passive leisure activities (interpretation walks, picnic areas, educational activities etc), There are no opportunities foreseen for developing active sports such as mountain biking. Because of the limited area available for tourism development, emphasis will be placed on maximizing viewing opportunities and education. This will be achieved through a system of interpretation boards and materials placed around the site / trails. These could include information on:

* Endemic and native plants found on site
* Medicinal plants and their uses
* Birds
* Geological features
* Agricultural practices and site history
* The telecommunication facility

At the view points, boards should be erected that explain the panorama the visitor is observing.

Where feasible, short trails should be created. These will be located primarily in the areas identified as the ex situ area. Trails could be themed to meet specific interests.

All main areas should be accessible to disabled or elderly visitors.

No accommodations for overnight stays should be developed for this site.

* Visitor Information and Services

1. Ex situ botanical garden
2. Visitor / Education Centre
3. Picnic Area – picnic areas should be provided
4. Observatory – to increase visitor interest in the site a small observatory focusing on astronomy / climatology / meteorology
5. Telecommunication Interpretation Centre –telecommunication equipment dominates the summit of Monte Verde and contains services for television, radio and mobile phone. The companies responsible for this equipment should be encouraged to jointly provide an interpretation centre at their summit site to provide information to visitors relating to the equipment and the services they provide. Furthermore, the companies should be encouraged to support the conservation activities of the park through sponsorship of activities or through assisting with land purchase for conservation as a means of indirectly paying the park for use of the site and compensation for the landscape impacts created by the equipment.

The proposed ecological restoration of the vegetation on Monte Verde will require the propagation and supply of endemic plant material. An opportunity exists for the local farmers to become involved in this process by utilizing some of their land for small nursery production and selling suitable plants back to the park management. Nurseries for seed production and / or medicinal herbs could provide additional incomes.

*3.3 Cha das Caldeiras – Fogo*

Inaugurated in 2003 under a KfW funded project the 8461 ha Cha das Caldeiras Natural Park was the first Park in Cape Verde to become operational. Between 2003 – 2006 the park was managed by the Delegation of the Ministry of Environment , Agriculture and Fisheries. In 2006 a park director and technician were appointed under the authority of the General Director of Environment. In 2007 the boundaries of the park were approved and given legal status. A park management plan and business plan have been completed. Tourism development and management are not included in the plans, other than their financial aspects. The population of the park is approximately 1000 persons; this figure has doubled over the past ten years, possibly due to the area’s economic success. The KfW project along with the Park Administration, NGOs and the US Peace Corp have been actively developing both livelihood and ecotourism activities within the park and its surrounding areas.

Agricultural activities within the crater are predominantly concerned with viniculture. Expansive areas have been planted with grapes. Owners of the vines have formed a cooperative and a winery has been established within the crater, producing wines and other beverages. The cooperative has 102 members drawn from the local community and a second winery has recently been established. Fogo wine is both nationally and internationally recognized and has a small export market. The park Management is increasingly concerned about the area of land under the vines and is looking to develop ways to restrict the further expansion of area under the vines whilst increasing production per hectare.

Livestock rearing provides an important revenue for farmers by providing both meat and milk products. Fogo goats cheese is considered one of the best in Cape Verde. Projects are underway to improve breeding and stock management. The cultivation of fruit is increasingly important and the difficulties of getting fruit to the market is being overcome by providing training to growers o dry fruit products, thereby adding value to their product. Fruits produced are figs, peaches, apples and quince. Forestry is undertaken on the outer slopes of the crater. A restoration programme has been initiated over a number of years with native species. The programme is not complete and five areas require rehabilitation. The forest is considered to be under managed. There is a high fire risk due to the need for forest cleaning operations. The forest is managed by the state but there is community interest in becoming involved in management. Products obtained from the forest are firewood and animal forage. The value of harvesting the medicinal herb plants is recognized but has not yet been commercially exploited.

Tourism is an important activity within the Cha das Caldeiras Natural Park. The area is known both nationally and internationally for hiking, and a number of hikes both within and outside the crater have been published. A walk around the crater rim is under development. Specialist geo-tourism has been one of the mainstays for visitors, attracting international geologists and volcanologists. A proposal for a UNESCO Geopark has been made, and although investigations for submitting an application were undertaken in 2008, no further information regarding the application is known. Facilities for tourism in the park include a small information centre at Bangaeira, which will provide services for booking local accommodation, hiring guides and providing general park information. There are three pensions within the crater providing accommodation (30 rooms) and informal room hire from local people is also available. The winery at Bangaeira is open for visits and the sale of produce. Developing hiking trails of various lengths and for all abilities should be a priority both inside and outside the crater and should be supported by local guides who are familiar with the routes. Because the Cha das Caldeiras is an active volcano it carries much interest for geo-tourism. The establishment of a Cha das Caldeiras Volcanic Observatory could be considered and would provide two functions, firstly for scientific research and secondly for tourism. For research the Cha das Caldeiras Volcanic Observatory would:

Work to reduce the impact of volcanic activity in the following ways:

1. Monitoring - a combination of techniques is used to continuously monitor the volcanic activity in Cha das Caldeiras so as to detect any changes in volcanic activity.
2. Researching - the Observatory provides a base for seismic and volcano research in Cape Verde. Scientists conduct research to improve understanding of the volcanic activity in Cha das Caldeiras and to contribute to the knowledge of volcanic phenomena in general.
3. Communicating - monitoring and research findings are used to provide the Government of Cape Verde with regular and timely advice so that appropriate decisions can be made to ensure the safety of residents.
4. Educating - The CDCVO would support local authorities with public education and information programmes on volcanic hazards and appropriate responses during periods of volcanic activity.
5. The CDCVO would provide scientific advice to GoCV for geoscience projects which monitor long-term environmental impacts of the volcano.

A visitor centre could also be associated with the observatory. This could provide 2 and 3D displays, self guided activities and documentaries describing the history of the volcano, how it was formed and the impact of the eruptions.

*3.4 Serra Negra / Costa Fragata*

Serra Negra and Costa Fragata form a continuous stretch of land down the eastern seaboard of the island. Serra Negra comprises a series of hills that rise to ninety nine metres and is located between Pta. do Morrinho Vermelho and Pta. da Fragata. Access to most of the beaches in Serra Negra area is difficult and can be reached only by boat. The area contains nesting seabirds and turtle nesting beaches, however the turtle nests in this area are vulnerable to high tides, SOS Tartarugas are collecting the eggs from this area and have created a hatchery elsewhere on the island to reduce this rate of loss in the future. The Costa Fragata is located directly south of Serra Negra and comprises a sandy beach approximately 2.5 km in length. The beach is backed by a line of high sand dunes and at the rear of the dunes is open land. Costa Fragata is a turtle nesting beach. At the present time there are no constructions on Serra Negra or facing the beach at Costa Fragata. It is understood that a hotel development has been planned for the southern end of the Fragata beach, but it is unclear if the Government has sold this land to a developer.

Recreation activities in the area are limited, and while Serra Negra can be accessed by quad bikes, these are not able to reach the sensitive areas easily. The Costa Fragata is an open access beach, however because of its east facing open aspect the beach is less attractive for sea bathing activities than beaches located on the west and south of the island, and the beach is used for wind / kite surfing. Because there is no controlled access to the beach, activities take place which are incompatible with the beache’s designation. The greatest problem is quad bikes which are used prolifically in this area, including along the beach and dunes. Quad bikes pose the greatest risk to turtle nesting sites; it was reported that in 2007 70% of turtle nests were destroyed by quad bikes. Signposts at the southern entry to the beach requesting quad bikes not to use the area have been vandalized. Offshore activities include diving and game fishing. Diving is reported as difficult in this area because of heavy swells and currents and is only suitable for experienced persons. Game fishing is purported to take place within the 3km zone reserved exclusively for local fishermen.

The foremost issue within this MPA will be the protection of the beaches from activities that disturb nesting turtles and damage their nests. It is illegal by law for quad bikes to be ridden on the beach or dunes at any time, however this law is flouted and not enforced. A programme to make the renting companies aware of the law and to inform their clients is a necessity, as is the constant presence of rangers between July and December to ensure nests are not disturbed and turtles are protected. Management of the MPA would best be achieved through the collaborative working of SOS Tartarugas and the local fishing community by involving them in conservation activities through employment as rangers and by providing an opportunity to develop ecotourism activities. Without this collaboration and involvement of the local fishing community it is unlikely that the MPA can be secured for conservation, given its highly vulnerable position and the threat posed by tourism.

In order to bring the fishing communities into the project they must receive direct benefits and have the opportunity to develop complimentary tourism services. The municipalities have put forward a proposal for the construction of a simple information centre, restaurant and small camp at Serra Negra which could be operated by the fishing community (through its association). Furthermore, both full and part time ranger staff for the MPA should be recruited from within the fishing community.

Whale watching has not been developed. It is an attraction that requires a sensitive approach in order for high quality viewing to be attained whilst protecting the whales from disturbance. The Whales are found off Murdeira from December until May. It has been proposed that the Murdeira MPA be extended to include the whole area used by the whales for calving, and that the fishing community, through the fishing association, be given exclusive rights for whale watching activities. By taking this approach the community can benefit directly from tourist activities. With support of the MPA management / Ministry of Environment a harmonious and high quality product can be developed that will protect the whales from exploitation by less environmentally sensitive operators. A fee from each ‘watcher’ should be paid to the MPA management to support other activities.

The following actions are required:

* Capacity building for fishing communities in environmental conservation, ranger work, business, interpretation management, craft production etc.
* Capacity building and assistance for the development of whale and turtle watching activities.
* Development of an environmental desert camp, a small restaurant and an information centre at Serra Negra to be operated by the fishing community.

*3.5 Boa Vista East Protected Areas*

The proposed PA management area comprises the following protected areas. These areas form a continuous loop around the East coat of the island and contain marine reserves, terrestrial reserves, a natural park and landscape protected areas:

* Parque Natural del Norte (16489 ha)
* Reserva Integral Ilheu dos Passaros (0.68 ha)
* Reserva Intergral Ilheu do Baluarte (7.65 ha)
* Reserva Natural Tararuga (1766 ha)
* Paisaje Protegido Curral Velho (1636 ha)
* Reserva Integral Ilheu de Curral Velho (0.51 ha)

Two further areas will be included in the overall management scheme. These areas are

1. Paisagem Protegida Monte Caçador e Pico Forcado (3365 ha)
2. Monumento Natural Monte Estancia (763 ha)

Together these protected areas create a park with wide landscapes and biological resources for ecotourism development based around the following:

* Turtle watching – laying and hatching, July - December
* Whale Watching – Humpback Whales, December – May
* Snorkelling – corals and nurse sharks.
* Bird Watching – Ramsar sites and IBAs species include Fregata magnificens Calonectris (diomedea) edwardsii. Puffinus (assimilis) boydi and Oceanodroma castro Falco (tinnunculus) alexandri, Coturnix coturnix, Cursorius cursor, Charadrius alexandrinus, Eremopterix nigriceps, Ammomanes cincturus, Alaemon alaudipes, Passer hispaniolensis and P. iagoensis. Pandion haliaetus.
* Hiking – mountain hiking, creation of a coastal pathway, day hikes and expeditions.
* Horse Riding – opportunities either for day rides or 2 – 3 day expeditions
* Fishing – opportunities developed with local fishermen, possibilities for catch and release programmes
* Desert Camping – favourable conditions for ‘wild’ camping.
* Culture – music, dance, handicrafts, gastronomy.

The development of the park for the east part of the island does present an opportunity for the island to offer a holiday destination complimentary to the type developing in the west. By using the benefits afforded by charter flights to the island (direct flights, cheaper flights) and the resources available in the park, a niche ecotourism market could be developed for Boa Vista. To maximize tourist numbers park visitor promotion should focus on:

* Day visitors from resort hotels located in the west of the island.
* Ecotourists requiring overnight accommodation and undertaking specific activities within the park.

A route for day visitors to the park should be formulated. This should avoid more sensitive ‘ecotourism’ locations which should be reserved for ‘staying ecotourists’. The itinerary for day visits could be developed around the visitor centre network proposed by the SDTIBM. In this way the carrying capacity of the more sensitive sites would not be affected.

Two large villages are located in the park area. These are Joao Galego and Fundo das Figueiras. The economies of both villages are based on fishing and agriculture. There already exists a conflict between local people in these communities and conservation. The communities support the construction of large resorts in the east of the island on the basis that they believe this type of development will bring jobs to the area. If the park is to be successful, the diversification of the economies of both communities so that they benefit from tourism activities will be an important factor in the successful establishment of the park. Special effort will therefore be placed on developing opportunities for the community to become involved and invest in tourism enterprises. In the past the communities have not been fully involved in conservation efforts and the provision of services such as ‘turtle watching.’ This weakness needs to be addressed in the short term. Developing ecotourism activities therefore needs to focus on community involvement and capacity building and training within communities so that that they are able to maximize potential development opportunities.

The area has a number of deserted villages both on the coast and inland, and one village has been reconstructed as an ‘ecolodge’ and is operated by an international investor. The deserted villages offer an opportunity to be developed into either tourist attractions or visitor accommodations. The most prominent village is Curral Velho, which is located close to the tourist development areas and would be suitable for conversion into a heritage craft village depicting traditional life on Boa Vista and encompassing craft sales / craft makers, interpretation etc. There are a number of small derelict fisherman’s houses close to a number of coves and beaches which could be converted into simple overnight accommodation and linked to a coastal walk. Other buildings are suitable for ecolodge conversions and house lets.

## Annex 6. GEF4 Complete Tracking Tools

****

**PA Management Effectiveness Tracking Tool – “METT”**

*for project*

**Consolidation of Cape Verde’s Protected Areas System**

**GEF’s Strategic Programme for West Africa - SPWA**

**Sub-Component Biodiversity**

Government of Cape Verde

Executing Agency: General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM)

United Nations Joint Office for Cape Verde

*through the*

United Nations Development Programme

UNDP GEF PIMS no. 4176

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | Section One: Project General Information | | |
|  |  | Name of reviewers completing tracking tool and completion dates | |
|  |  | Project coverage in hectares | |
|  |  | Protected areas that are the target of the GEF intervention | |
|  | Section Two: Management Effectiveness Tracking Tool for Protected Areas: | | |
|  |  | Reporting Progress at Protected Area Sites: | |
|  |  |  | Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 1] MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island |
|  |  |  | Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 2] MPA Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island |
|  |  |  | Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 3] Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista, Boavista Island |
|  |  |  | Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 4] Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park, Fogo Island |
|  |  |  | Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 5] Monte Verde Natural Park, São Vicente Island |
|  |  |  | Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 6] Morroços Natural Park, Santo Antão Island |
|  |  |  | Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 7] Cova, Paul and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park, Santo Antão Island |
|  |  | Protected Areas Threats: Data Sheet 2 | |
|  |  | Assessment Form | |
|  | Section Three: UNDP’s Financial Sustainability Scorecard for National Systems of Protected Areas | | |
|  |  | Financial Scorecard - Part I – Overall Financial Status of the Protected Areas System | |
|  |  | Financial Scorecard – Part II – Assessing Elements of the Financing System | |
|  |  | Financial Scorecard – Part III – Scoring and Measuring Progress | |

**PA Management Effectiveness Tracking Tool – “METT”**

*Conceived by the World Bank/WWF Alliance for Forest Conservation and Sustainable Use*

### Section One: Project General Information

1. Project Name: **SPWA - Consolidation of Cape Verde’s Protected Areas System**
2. Project Type (MSP or FSP): FSP
3. Project ID (GEF): 3752
4. Project ID (IA): 4176
5. Implementing Agency: UNDP
6. Country(ies): Cape Verde

#### Name of reviewers completing tracking tool and completion dates

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Name** | **Title** | **Agency** |
| **CEO Endorsement (July 2009**)**\*** | [1]Maria Tereza Vera-Cruz;  [2] José Levy;  [3] Fabiana Issler | [1] Protected Area Manager, the General Directorate for the Environment (DGA); [2] Environment Focal Point at the /Assistant Resident Representative;  [3] Regional Technical Advisor for Biodiversity | [1] DGA;  [2] UN Joint Office in Praia;  [3] UNDP Environment and Energy Group, Regional Office |
| **Project Mid-term** | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| **Final Evaluation/project completion** | n/a | n/a | n/a |

\*The PIF for the project was included in the November 2008 Work Programme. However, the first application of the tool is being carried out at project CEO Endorsement.

7. Project duration: ***Planned*** 4 years ***Actual*** n/a years

8. Lead Project Executing Agency (ies):

**General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM)**

9. GEF Strategic Program:

[ ] Sustainable Financing of Protected Area Systems at the National Level (SP 1)

[x] Increasing Representation of Effectively Managed Marine PAs in PA Systems (SP 2)

[x] Strengthening Terrestrial PA Networks (SP 3)

##### Project coverage in hectares

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Targets and Timeframe** | **Foreseen at project start (ha)** | **Achievement at Mid-term Evaluation of Project (ha)** | **Achievement at Final Evaluation of Project (ha)** |
| **Total Extent in hectares of protected areas targeted by the project by biome type** | | | |
| **Cape Verde’s Terrestrial Ecosystems** | 13,157 | **n/a** | **n/a** |
| **Cape Verde’s Coastal and Marine Ecosystems** | 49,274 | **n/a** | **n/a** |
| **Total** | 62,430 | n/a | n/a |

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **METT (query from Cape Verde’s PA Database)** | | | | | | |
| **Island** | **PA name and designation** | **Exclusively terrestrial PAs** | **Marine and coastal PAs - ie MPAs** | **Land surface (ha) - PAs and MPAs** | **Seascape (ha) - MPAs** | **TOTAL (ha)** |
| Ilha do Sal | MPA Ponta do Sinó | No | Yes | 48.75 | 4,845.46 | 4,894.21 |
| Ilha do Sal | MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata | No | Yes | 945.32 | 4,220.54 | 5,165.86 |
| Ilha de Boavista | Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista | No | Yes | 13,912.89 | 25,300.86 | 39,213.75 |
| Ilha do Fogo | Parque Natural Chã das Caldeiras | Yes | No | 8,468.51 |  | 8,468.51 |
| Ilha de São Vicente | Parque Natural Monte Verde | Yes | No | 800 |  | 800 |
| Ilha de Santo Antão | Parque Natural Morroços | Yes | No | 671 |  | 671 |
| Ilha de Santo Antão | Parque Natural Cova/Paul/RªTorre | Yes | No | 3,217.00 |  | 3,217.00 |

##### Protected areas that are the target of the GEF intervention

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **#** | **Name of Protected Area** | **Is this a new protected area? (Y / N)** | **Area (ha)** | **Biome type** | **Global designation or priority lists [1]**  (E.g., Biosphere Reserve, World Heritage site, Ramsar site, WWF Global 200, etc.) | **Local Designation of Protected Area** (E.g, indigenous reserve, private reserve, etc.) | **IUCN Category for each Protected Area** | | | | | |
| **I** | **II** | **III** | **IV** | **V** | **VI** |
| 1 | MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island | Yes [2] | 5,166 | Cape Verde’s Coastal and Marine Ecosystems | [5] | Yet to be defined | X |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | MPA Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island | Yes [3] | 4,894 | Cape Verde’s Coastal and Marine Ecosystems | [5] | Yet to be defined | X |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista | Yes [4] | 39,214 | Cape Verde’s Coastal and Marine Ecosystems | Includes the Protected Landscape of Curral Velho (1,636.87 ha), which is a Ramsar Site [5] | Yet to be defined |  |  |  |  |  | X |
| 4 | Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park | No | 8,469 | Cape Verde’s Terrestrial Ecosystems | WWF Global 200 Macaronesian Forests | Natural Park |  | X |  |  |  |  |
| 5 | Monte Verde Natural Park | No | 800 | Cape Verde’s Terrestrial Ecosystems | WWF Global 200 Macaronesian Forests | Natural Park |  | X |  |  |  |  |
| 6 | Morroços Natural Park | No | 671 | Cape Verde’s Terrestrial Ecosystems | WWF Global 200 Macaronesian Forests | Natural Park |  | X |  |  |  |  |
| 7 | Cova, Paul and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park | No | 3,217 | Cape Verde’s Terrestrial Ecosystems | WWF Global 200 Macaronesian Forests | Natural Park |  | X |  |  |  |  |

**Notes:**

[1] A recent global study identified Cape Verde as one of the world’s top ten coral reef biodiversity hotspots (Roberts CM, et al. *Marine biodiversity hotspots and conservation priorities for tropical reefs.* Science 2002; 295:1280-1284. See also http://www.starfish.ch/reef/hotspots.html#9). The whole of the archipelago is also an Important Bird Area (IBA).

[2] The new MPA includes some coastal/marine sites that are already gazetted by Decree-Law 3/2003, but it also includes the consolidation of these sites and the significant expansion of the marine area towards the sea. The originally gazetted sites are: Costa da Fragata Natural Reserve (351.68 ha); Serra Negra Natural Reserve (335.9 ha); and Salinas de Santa Maria Protected Landscape (78.44 ha).

[3] The new MPA includes the Ponta do Sinó Natural Reserve (89.28 ha), which is a coastal/marine site that is already gazetted by Decree-Law 3/2003, but it also includes a significant expansion of the marine area towards the sea and towards the North.

[4] The new MPA (called on an interim basis as “Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista”) includes some coastal/marine sites that are already gazetted by Decree-Law 3/2003, but it also includes the consolidation of these sites and the significant expansion of the marine area towards the sea. The originally gazetted sites are: the Natural Park do Norte (with 8,964.64 ha of landscape and 7,524.45 ha of seascape, totalling 16,489.09 ha); Tartaruga Natural Reserve (1,766.42 ha); the four Integrated Natural Reserves of Ilhéu de Baluarte (7.65 ha); Ilhéu dos Passaros (0.68 ha); Ilhéu de Curral Velho (0.51 ha); the two Protected Landscapes of Curral Velho (1,636.87 ha); and the Monte Estancia Natural Monument (763.30 ha)

[5] A recent global study identified Cape Verde as one of the world’s top ten coral reef biodiversity hotspots (Roberts CM, et al. Marine biodiversity hotspots and conservation priorities for tropical reefs. Science 2002; 295:1280-1284. See also http://www.starfish.ch/reef/hotspots.html#9)

**Reference on IUCN PA Categories**

I. Strict Nature Reserve/Wilderness Area: managed mainly for science or wilderness protection

II. National Park: managed mainly for ecosystem protection and recreation

III. Natural Monument: managed mainly for conservation of specific natural features

IV. Habitat/Species Management Area: managed mainly for conservation through management intervention

V. Protected Landscape/Seascape: managed mainly for landscape/seascape protection and recreation

VI. Managed Resource Protected Area: managed mainly for the sustainable use of natural ecosystems

### Section Two: Management Effectiveness Tracking Tool for Protected Areas:

**METT Target Sites:**

1 MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island

2 MPA Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island

3 Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista

4 Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park

5 Monte Verde Natural Park

6 Morroços Natural Park

7 Cova, Paul and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park

##### Reporting Progress at Protected Area Sites:

**Data Sheets 1 and 2** follow for each of the above mentioned METT target site.

**Information on international designations** is provided **only** for site [3] Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista, due to the presence of a Ramsar site.

###### Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 1] MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Name, affiliation and contact details for person responsible for completing the METT (email etc.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Maria Teresa Vera-Cruz, National Coordinator of Protected Areas Project, [mateja310@hotmail.com](mailto:mateja310@hotmail.com) & Jose Levy | | | | | | | | | |
| Date assessment carried out | | | | | | | | | | July 2009 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name of protected area | | | | | | | | | | **Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| WDPA site code (these codes can be found on www.unep-wcmc.org/wdpa/) | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Designations | | | National  Natural Reserve | | | | | | | | | | IUCN Category  I | | | | | | | | | International (please also complete sheet overleaf ) | | |
| Country | Cape Verde Islands | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Location of protected area (province and if possible map reference) | | | | | | | | | | | | Sal Island – East coast | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Date of establishment | | | | | 24th February 2003 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ownership details (please tick) | | | | | | | | State  X | | | | | | | | Private | | | | Community | | | | Other |
| Management Authority | | | | | | | General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Size of protected area (ha) | | | | | | | 5,165.86 ha | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Number of staff | | | | Permanent  0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Temporary  0 | | | | | |
| Annual budget (US$) **–** excluding staff salary costs | | | | | | | | | | Recurrent (operational) funds  0 | | | | | | | | | | | Project or other supplementary funds  0 | | | |
| What are the main values for which the area is designated | | | | | | | | | | Marine Biodiversity (Corals & fish) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| List the two primary protected area management objectives | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 1 | | | | | | Conservation | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 2 | | | | | | Community Development | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| No. of people involved in completing assessment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | |
| Including: (tick boxes) | | PA manager  | | | | | | | PA staff  | | | | | | | | | Other PA  agency staff  | | | | | NGO  | |
| Local community  | | | | | | | Donors  | | | | | | | | | External experts  | | | | | Other  | |
| Please note if assessment was carried out in association with a particular project, on behalf of an organisation or donor. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | no | | | | | | | | | | |

###### Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 2] MPA Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Name, affiliation and contact details for person responsible for completing the METT (email etc.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Maria Teresa Vera-Cruz, National Coordinator of Protected Areas Project, [mateja310@hotmail.com](mailto:mateja310@hotmail.com) & Jose Levy | | | | | | | | | |
| Date assessment carried out | | | | | | | | | | July 2009 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name of protected area | | | | | | | | | | **Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| WDPA site code (these codes can be found on www.unep-wcmc.org/wdpa/) | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Designations | | | Natural Reserve | | | | | | | | | | IUCN Category  I | | | | | | | | | International (please also complete sheet overleaf ) | | |
| Country | Cape Verde Islands | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Location of protected area (province and if possible map reference) | | | | | | | | | | | | Sal Island – East coast | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Date of establishment | | | | | 24th February 2003 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ownership details (please tick) | | | | | | | | State  X | | | | | | | | Private | | | | Community | | | | Other |
| Management Authority | | | | | | | General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Size of protected area (ha) | | | | | | | 4,894.21 ha | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Number of staff | | | | Permanent  0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Temporary  0 | | | | | |
| Annual budget (US$) **–** excluding staff salary costs | | | | | | | | | | Recurrent (operational) funds | | | | | | | | | | | Project or other supplementary funds | | | |
| What are the main values for which the area is designated | | | | | | | | | | Marine Biodiversity | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| List the two primary protected area management objectives | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 1 | | | | | | Conservation | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 2 | | | | | | Ecoturism development | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| No. of people involved in completing assessment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | |
| Including: (tick boxes) | | PA manager  | | | | | | | PA staff  | | | | | | | | | Other PA  agency staff  | | | | | NGO  | |
| Local community  | | | | | | | Donors  | | | | | | | | | External experts  | | | | | Other  | |
| Please note if assessment was carried out in association with a particular project, on behalf of an organisation or donor. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | NO | | | | | | | | | | |

###### Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 3] Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista, Boavista Island

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Name, affiliation and contact details for person responsible for completing the METT (email etc.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Maria Teresa Vera-Cruz, National Coordinator of Protected Areas Project, [mateja310@hotmail.com](mailto:mateja310@hotmail.com) & Jose Levy | | | | | | | | | |
| Date assessment carried out | | | | | | | | | | July 2009 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name of protected area | | | | | | | | | | Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista, Boavista Island | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| WDPA site code (these codes can be found on www.unep-wcmc.org/wdpa/) | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Designations | | | National  Parque Marinho | | | | | | | | | | IUCN Category  VI | | | | | | | | | International (please also complete sheet overleaf ) | | |
| Country | Cape Verde Islands | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Location of protected area (province and if possible map reference) | | | | | | | | | | | | Boavista Island – East coast | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Date of establishment | | | | | 24th February 2003 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ownership details (please tick) | | | | | | | | State  X | | | | | | | | Private | | | | Community | | | | Other |
| Management Authority | | | | | | | General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Size of protected area (ha) | | | | | | | 42,578.76 ha | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Number of staff | | | | Permanent  0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Temporary  0 | | | | | |
| Annual budget (US$) **–** excluding staff salary costs | | | | | | | | | | Recurrent (operational) funds  0 | | | | | | | | | | | Project or other supplementary funds  0 | | | |
| What are the main values for which the area is designated | | | | | | | | | | Primarily turtles & other marine biodiversity | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| List the two primary protected area management objectives | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 1 | | | | | | Conservation | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 2 | | | | | | Poverty alleviation of the surrounding community | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| No. of people involved in completing assessment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 2 | | | | | | | |
| Including: (tick boxes) | | PA manager  | | | | | | | PA staff  | | | | | | | | | Other PA  agency staff  | | | | | NGO  | |
| Local community  | | | | | | | Donors  | | | | | | | | | External experts  | | | | | Other  | |
| Please note if assessment was carried out in association with a particular project, on behalf of an organisation or donor. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | NO | | | | | | | | | | |

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Information on International Designations** | | | | | |
| **UNESCO World Heritage site (see: whc.unesco.org/en/list)** | | | | | |
| Date listed | Site name | | | Site area | Geographical  co-ordinates |
| Criteria for designation  (i.e. criteria i to x) | |  | | | |
| Statement of Outstanding Universal Value | |  | | | |
| **Ramsar site (see: www.wetlands.org/RSDB/)** | | | | | |
| Date listed  July 18, 2005 | | Site name  Curral Velho | | Site area  Not available | Geographical  number    1CV001 |
| Reason for Designation (see Ramsar Information Sheet) | | | Wetlands of international importance. | | |
| **UNESCO Man and Biosphere Reserves (see: www.unesco.org/mab/wnbrs.shtml)** | | | | | |
| Date listed | Site name | | | Site area  Total:  Core:  Buffer:  Transition: | Geographical  co-ordinates |
| Criteria for designation | |  | | | |
| Fulfilment of three functions of MAB (conservation, development and logistic support.) | |  | | | |
| Please list other designations (i.e. ASEAN Heritage, Natura 2000) and any supporting information below | | | | | |
| Name: | | Detail: | | | |
| Name: | | Detail: | | | |
| Name: | | Detail: | | | |
| Name: | | Detail: | | | |

###### Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 4] Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park, Fogo Island

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Name, affiliation and contact details for person responsible for completing the METT (email etc.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Maria Teresa Vera-Cruz, National Coordinator of Protected Areas Project, [mateja310@hotmail.com](mailto:mateja310@hotmail.com) & Jose Levy | | | | | | | | | |
| Date assessment carried out | | | | | | | | | | July 2009 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name of protected area | | | | | | | | | | Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park, Fogo Island | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| WDPA site code (these codes can be found on www.unep-wcmc.org/wdpa/) | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Designations | | | National  Natural Park | | | | | | | | | | IUCN Category  II | | | | | | | | | International (please also complete sheet overleaf ) | | |
| Country | Cape Verde Islands | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Location of protected area (province and if possible map reference) | | | | | | | | | | | | Fogo Island – Top South | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Date of establishment | | | | | 24th February 2003 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ownership details (please tick) | | | | | | | | State  X | | | | | | | | Private | | | | Community | | | | Other |
| Management Authority | | | | | | | General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Size of protected area (ha) | | | | | | | 8,469 ha | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Number of staff | | | | Permanent  4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Temporary  6 | | | | | |
| Annual budget (US$) **–** excluding staff salary costs | | | | | | | | | | Recurrent (operational) funds | | | | | | | | | | | Project or other supplementary funds | | | |
| What are the main values for which the area is designated | | | | | | | | | | Forest area with most number of endemic plants of the Island | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| List the two primary protected area management objectives | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 1 | | | | | | Conservation | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 2 | | | | | | Poverty alleviation of the surrounding community | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| No. of people involved in completing assessment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | |
| Including: (tick boxes) | | PA manager  | | | | | | | PA staff  | | | | | | | | | Other PA  agency staff  | | | | | NGO  | |
| Local community  | | | | | | | Donors  | | | | | | | | | External experts  | | | | | Other  | |
| Please note if assessment was carried out in association with a particular project, on behalf of an organisation or donor. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | NO | | | | | | | | | | |

###### Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 5] Monte Verde Natural Park, São Vicente Island

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Name, affiliation and contact details for person responsible for completing the METT (email etc.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Maria Teresa Vera-Cruz, National Coordinator of Protected Areas Project, [mateja310@hotmail.com](mailto:mateja310@hotmail.com) & Jose Levy | | | | | | | | | |
| Date assessment carried out | | | | | | | | | | July 2009 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name of protected area | | | | | | | | | | Monte Verde Natural Park, São Vicente Island | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| WDPA site code (these codes can be found on www.unep-wcmc.org/wdpa/) | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Designations | | | National  Natural Park | | | | | | | | | | IUCN Category  II | | | | | | | | | International (please also complete sheet overleaf ) | | |
| Country | Cape Verde Islands | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Location of protected area (province and if possible map reference) | | | | | | | | | | | | Sao Vicente Island, in the middle of the Island | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Date of establishment | | | | | 24th February 2003 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ownership details (please tick) | | | | | | | | State  X | | | | | | | | Private | | | | Community | | | | Other |
| Management Authority | | | | | | | General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Size of protected area (ha) | | | | | | | 800 ha | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Number of staff | | | | Permanent  0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Temporary  0 | | | | | |
| Annual budget (US$) **–** excluding staff salary costs | | | | | | | | | | Recurrent (operational) funds  0 | | | | | | | | | | | Project or other supplementary funds  0 | | | |
| What are the main values for which the area is designated | | | | | | | | | | The natural vegetation of the Island | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| List the two primary protected area management objectives | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 1 | | | | | | Conservation | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 2 | | | | | | Environmental education & ecoturism development | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| No. of people involved in completing assessment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | |
| Including: (tick boxes) | | PA manager  | | | | | | | PA staff  | | | | | | | | | Other PA  agency staff  | | | | | NGO  | |
| Local community  | | | | | | | Donors  | | | | | | | | | External experts  | | | | | Other  | |
| Please note if assessment was carried out in association with a particular project, on behalf of an organisation or donor. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | NO | | | | | | | | | | |

###### Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 6] Morroços Natural Park, Santo Antão Island

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Name, affiliation and contact details for person responsible for completing the METT (email etc.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Maria Teresa Vera-Cruz, National Coordinator of Protected Areas Project, [mateja310@hotmail.com](mailto:mateja310@hotmail.com) & Jose Levy | | | | | | | | | |
| Date assessment carried out | | | | | | | | | | July 2009 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name of protected area | | | | | | | | | | Morroços Natural Park | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| WDPA site code (these codes can be found on www.unep-wcmc.org/wdpa/) | | | | | | | | | | | July 2009 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Designations | | | Natural Park | | | | | | | | | | IUCN Category  II | | | | | | | | | International (please also complete sheet overleaf ) | | |
| Country | Cape Verde Islands | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Location of protected area (province and if possible map reference) | | | | | | | | | | | | Santo Antao Island - Central Northern part of the Island | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Date of establishment | | | | | 24th February 2003 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ownership details (please tick) | | | | | | | | State  X | | | | | | | | Private | | | | Community | | | | Other |
| Management Authority | | | | | | | General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Size of protected area (ha) | | | | | | | 671 ha | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Number of staff | | | | Permanent 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Temporary  0 | | | | | |
| Annual budget (US$) **–** excluding staff salary costs | | | | | | | | | | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | Project or other supplementary funds  0 | | | |
| What are the main values for which the area is designated | | | | | | | | | | Area in the country with most endemic plants per surface area | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| List the two primary protected area management objectives | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 1 | | | | | | Conservation | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 2 | | | | | | Poverty alleviation of the surrounding community | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| No. of people involved in completing assessment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 2 | | | | | | | |
| Including: (tick boxes) | |  | | | | | | | PA staff  | | | | | | | | | Other PA  agency staff  | | | | | NGO  | |
| No. of people involved in completing assessment | | | | | | | Donor X | | | | | | | | | External experts  | | | | | Other  | |
| Please note if assessment was carried out in association with a particular project, on behalf of an organisation or donor. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | NO | | | | | | | | | | |

###### Data Sheet 1 for [METT Target Site 7] Cova, Paul and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park, Santo Antão Island

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Name, affiliation and contact details for person responsible for completing the METT (email etc.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Maria Teresa Vera-Cruz, National Coordinator of Protected Areas Project, [mateja310@hotmail.com](mailto:mateja310@hotmail.com) & Jose Levy | | | | | | | | | |
| Date assessment carried out | | | | | | | | | | July 2009 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name of protected area | | | | | | | | | | Cova, Ribeira de Paul and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| WDPA site code (these codes can be found on www.unep-wcmc.org/wdpa/) | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Designations | | | National  Natural Park | | | | | | | | | | IUCN Category  II | | | | | | | | | International (please also complete sheet overleaf ) | | |
| Country | Cape Verde Islands | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Location of protected area (province and if possible map reference) | | | | | | | | | | | | Santo Antao Island | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Date of establishment | | | | | 24th February 2003 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ownership details (please tick) | | | | | | | | State  X | | | | | | | | Private | | | | Community | | | | Other |
| Management Authority | | | | | | | General Directorate for the Environment (DGA), Ministry of Environment, Rural Development and Marine Resources (MADRRM) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Size of protected area (ha) | | | | | | | 3,217 ha | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Number of staff | | | | Permanent  0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Temporary  0 | | | | | |
| Annual budget (US$) **–** excluding staff salary costs | | | | | | | | | | Recurrent (operational) funds  0 | | | | | | | | | | | Project or other supplementary funds  0 | | | |
| What are the main values for which the area is designated | | | | | | | | | | Landscape, terrestrial biodiversity | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| List the two primary protected area management objectives | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 1 | | | | | | Conservation | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Management objective 2 | | | | | | Poverty alleviation of the surrounding community | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| No. of people involved in completing assessment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | | | | | | | |
| Including: (tick boxes) | | PA manager  | | | | | | | PA staff  | | | | | | | | | Other PA  agency staff  | | | | | NGO  | |
| Local community  | | | | | | | Donors  | | | | | | | | | External experts  | | | | | Other  | |
| Please note if assessment was carried out in association with a particular project, on behalf of an organisation or donor. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | NO | | | | | | | | | | |

##### Protected Areas Threats: Data Sheet 2

Existing threats are indicated as either **of high (H), medium (M) or low (L) significance.** Threats ranked as of high significance are those which are seriously degrading values; medium are those threats having some negative impact and those characterised as low are threats which are present but not seriously impacting values or **N/A** where the threat is not present or not applicable in the protected area (cells are not to be left blank).

| **Threats (column below) / METT Target Sites (to the right)** | [1] MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island | [2] MPA Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island | [3] Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista | [4] Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park | [5] Monte Verde Natural Park | [6] Morroços Natural Park | [7] Cova, Paul and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **1.        Residential and commercial development within a protected area** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from human settlements or other non-agricultural land uses with a substantial footprint |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1.1 Housing and settlement | L | L | L | M | L | n/a | M |
| 1.2 Commercial and industrial areas | L | L | n/a | L | n/a | n/a | L |
| 1.3 Tourism and recreation infrastructure | **H** | **H** | n/a | M | L | n/a | M |
| **2. Agriculture and aquaculture within a protected area** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from farming and grazing as a result of agricultural expansion and intensification, including silviculture, mariculture and aquaculture |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2.1 Annual and perennial non-timber crop cultivation | L | L | L | **H** | **H** | n/a | M |
| 2.1a Drug cultivation | L | L | n/a | L | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 2.2 Wood and pulp plantations | L | L | n/a | L | n/a | M | L |
| 2.3 Livestock farming and grazing | L | L | L | **H** | n/a | L | M |
| 2.4 Marine and freshwater aquaculture | L | L | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| **3. Energy production and mining within a protected area** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from production of non-biological resources |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3.1 Oil and gas drilling | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 3.2 Mining and quarrying | **H** | L | L | M | NA | L | M |
| 3.3 Energy generation, including from hydropower dams | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| **4. Transportation and service corridors within a protected area** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from long narrow transport corridors and the vehicles that use them including associated wildlife mortality |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4.1 Roads and railroads (include road-killed animals) | M | M | L | L | n/a | n/a | L |
| 4.2 Utility and service lines (e.g. electricity cables, telephone lines,) | L | L | L | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 4.3 Shipping lanes and canals | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 4.4 Flight paths | n/a | L | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| **5. Biological resource use and harm within a protected area** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from consumptive use of "wild" biological resources including both deliberate and unintentional harvesting effects; also persecution or control of specific species (note this includes hunting and killing of animals) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5.1 Hunting, killing and collecting terrestrial animals (including killing of animals as a result of human/wildlife conflict) | L | L | L | L | L | L | L |
| 5.2 Gathering terrestrial plants or plant products (non-timber) | M | M | L | M | **H** | M | M |
| 5.3 Logging and wood harvesting | n/a | n/a | L | M | L | M | M |
| 5.4 Fishing, killing and harvesting aquatic resources | **H** | M | L | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| **6. Human intrusions and disturbance within a protected area** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from human activities that alter, destroy or disturb habitats and species associated with non-consumptive uses of biological resources |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6.1 Recreational activities and tourism | **H** | **H** | L | L | L | L | M |
| 6.2 War, civil unrest and military exercises | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 6.3 Research, education and other work-related activities in protected areas | L | L | M | L | L | L | L |
| 6.4 Activities of protected area managers (e.g. construction or vehicle use, artificial watering points and dams) | L | L | n/a | L | L | n/a | L |
| 6.5 Deliberate vandalism, destructive activities or threats to protected area staff and visitors | L | L | L | L | L | n/a | L |
| **7. Natural system modifications** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from other actions that convert or degrade habitat or change the way the ecosystem functions |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7.1 Fire and fire suppression (including arson) | n/a | n/a | n/a | M | L | L | M |
| 7.2 Dams, hydrological modification and water management/use | n/a | n/a | n/a | L | L | n/a | L |
| 7.3a Increased fragmentation within protected area | L | L | n/a | M | M | n/a | L |
| 7.3b Isolation from other natural habitat (e.g. deforestation, dams without effective aquatic wildlife passages) | M | M | n/a | L | **H** | M | L |
| 7.3c Other ‘edge effects’ on park values | L | L | n/a |  |  |  |  |
| 7.3d Loss of keystone species (e.g. top predators, pollinators etc) | M | M | L | L | M | L | L |
| **8. Invasive and other problematic species and genes** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from terrestrial and aquatic non-native and native plants, animals, pathogens/microbes or genetic materials that have or are predicted to have harmful effects on biodiversity following introduction, spread and/or increase |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8.1 Invasive non-native/alien plants (weeds) | L | L | L | M | M | M | M |
| 8.1a Invasive non-native/alien animals | L | L | L | L | L | L | L |
| 8.1b Pathogens (non-native or native but creating new/increased problems) | L | L | L | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 8.2 Introduced genetic material (e.g. genetically modified organisms) | L | L | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| **9. Pollution entering or generated within protected area** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from introduction of exotic and/or excess materials or energy from point and non-point sources |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 9.1 Household sewage and urban waste water | L | M | L | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 9.1a Sewage and waste water from protected area facilities (e.g. toilets, hotels etc) | L | **H** | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 9.2 Industrial, mining and military effluents and discharges (e.g. poor water quality discharge from dams, e.g. unnatural temperatures, de-oxygenated, other pollution) | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 9.3 Agricultural and forestry effluents (e.g. excess fertilizers or pesticides) | n/a | n/a | L | L | L | n/a | M |
| 9.4 Garbage and solid waste | M | M | M | L | L | n/a | M |
| 9.5 Air-borne pollutants | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| 9.6 Excess energy (e.g. heat pollution, lights etc) | n/a | L | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| **10. Geological events** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Geological events may be part of natural disturbance regimes in many ecosystems. But they can be a threat if a species or habitat is damaged and has lost its resilience and is vulnerable to disturbance. Management capacity to respond to some of these changes may be limited. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 10.1 Volcanoes | n/a | n/a | n/a | **H** | L | L | L |
| 10.2 Earthquakes/Tsunamis | L | L | n/a | L | L | L | L |
| 10.3 Avalanches/ Landslides | n/a | n/a | n/a | L | L | L | M |
| 10.4 Erosion and siltation/ deposition (e.g. shoreline or riverbed changes) | **H** | **H** | L | L | L | L | M |
| **11. Climate change and severe weather** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Threats from long-term climatic changes which may be linked to global warming and other severe climatic/weather events outside of the natural range of variation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 11.1 Habitat shifting and alteration | L | L | L | M | M | L | M |
| 11.2 Droughts | L | L | L | **H** | **H** | **H** | **H** |
| 11.3 Temperature extremes | L | L | n/a | L | L | L | L |
| 11.4 Storms and flooding | n/a | n/a | n/a | L | L | L | M |
| **12. Specific cultural and social threats** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12.1 Loss of cultural links, traditional knowledge and/or management practices | L | L | L | L | L | L | L |
| 12.2 Natural deterioration of important cultural site values | L | M | M | L | L | L | L |
| 12.3 Destruction of cultural heritage buildings, gardens, sites etc | n/a | n/a | M | L | M | L | M |

##### Assessment Form

| **Issue** | **Criteria** | **Score** | [1] MPA Serra Negra/Costa da Fragata, Sal Island | [2] MPA Ponta do Ponta do Sinó, Sal Island | [3] Parque Marinho do Leste de Boavista | [4] Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park | [5] Monte Verde Natural Park | [6] Morroços Natural Park | [7] Cova, Paul and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park | **Comment/ Explanation** | **Next steps** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **1. Legal status** | The protected area is not gazetted/covenanted | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Does the protected area have legal status (or in the case of private reserves is covered by a covenant or similar)? | There is agreement that the protected area should be gazetted/covenanted but the process has not yet begun | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Note: see fourth option for private reserves |  |
| *Context* | The protected area is in the process of being gazetted/covenanted but the process is still incomplete (includes sites designated under international conventions, such as Ramsar, or local/traditional law such as community conserved areas, which do not yet have national legal status or covenant) | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | The protected area has been formally gazetted/covenanted | 3 | **3** | **3** | **3** | **3** | **3** | **3** | **3** |  |  |
| **2. Protected area regulations** | There are no regulations for controlling land use and activities in the protected area | 0 | **0** | **0** |  |  | **0** | **0** | **0** | At this moment, in spite of the fact that all sites are legally created, only the Chã das Caldeiras Natural Park is being managed. All others will benefit from new project for management purposes | New project will identify measures to physically create the protected areas |
| Are appropriate regulations in place to control land use and activities (e.g. hunting)? | Some regulations for controlling land use and activities in the protected area exist but these are major weaknesses | 1 |  |  | **1** |  |  |  |  | Natura 2000 already carries out some research activities |  |
| *Planning* | Regulations for controlling land use and activities in the protected area exist but there are some weaknesses or gaps | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Regulations for controlling inappropriate land use and activities in the protected area exist and provide an excellent basis for management | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **3. Law enforcement** | The staff have no effective capacity/resources to enforce protected area legislation and regulations | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | No staff yet assigned to these areas to implement legal aspects |  |
| Can staff (i.e. those with responsibility for managing the site) enforce protected area rules well enough? | There are major deficiencies in staff capacity/resources to enforce protected area legislation and regulations (e.g. lack of skills, no patrol budget, lack of institutional support) | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | The staff have acceptable capacity/resources to enforce protected area legislation and regulations but some deficiencies remain | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Input* | The staff have excellent capacity/resources to enforce protected area legislation and regulations | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **4. Protected area objectives** | No firm objectives have been agreed for the protected area | 0 | **0** | **0** |  |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Is management undertaken according to agreed objectives? | The protected area has agreed objectives, but is not managed according to these objectives | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Planning* | The protected area has agreed objectives, but is only partially managed according to these objectives | 2 |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | The protected area has agreed objectives and is managed to meet these objectives | 3 |  |  |  | **3** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **5. Protected area design** | Inadequacies in protected area design mean achieving the major objectives of the protected area is very difficult | 0 |  |  | **0** |  |  |  |  | Although there is a legally created protected area, the reality is that uncontrolled private tourism initiatves are for the moment making inadequate use of the areas |  |
| Is the protected area the right size and shape to protect species, habitats, ecological processes and water catchments of key conservation concern? | Inadequacies in protected area design mean that achievement of major objectives is difficult but some mitigating actions are being taken (e.g. agreements with adjacent land owners for wildlife corridors or introduction of appropriate catchment management) | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Planning* | Protected area design is not significantly constraining achievement of objectives, but could be improved (e.g. with respect to larger scale ecological processes) | 2 | **2** | **2** |  |  | **2** | **2** | **2** |  |  |
|  | Protected area design helps achievement of objectives; it is appropriate for species and habitat conservation; and maintains ecological processes such as surface and groundwater flows at a catchment scale, natural disturbance patterns etc | 3 |  |  |  | **3** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **6. Protected area boundary demarcation** | The boundary of the protected area is not known by the management authority or local residents/neighbouring land users | 0 |  |  | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** | The protected areas have been created. However, physical demarcation has not taken place yet |  |
| Is the boundary known and demarcated? | The boundary of the protected area is known by the management authority but is not known by local residents/neighbouring land users | 1 | **1** | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Process* | The boundary of the protected area is known by both the management authority and local residents/neighbouring land users but is not appropriately demarcated | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | The boundary of the protected area is known by the management authority and local residents/neighbouring land users and is appropriately demarcated | 3 |  |  |  | **3** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **7. Management plan** | There is no management plan for the protected area | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** | No physical interventions in these areas have taken place yet |  |
| Is there a management plan and is it being implemented? | A management plan is being prepared or has been prepared but is not being implemented | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Planning* | A management plan exists but it is only being partially implemented because of funding constraints or other problems | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | A management plan exists and is being implemented | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Additional points:** | 7a. The planning process allows adequate opportunity for key stakeholders to influence the management plan | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Planning* | 7b. There is an established schedule and process for periodic review and updating of the management plan | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 7c. The results of monitoring, research and evaluation are routinely incorporated into planning | 1 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **8. Regular work plan** | No regular work plan exists | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** | No physical, organized interventions in these areas have taken place yet. However, minor activities have been implemented by Govt and NGOs |  |
| Is there a regular work plan and is it being implemented | A regular work plan exists but few of the activities are implemented | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Planning/Outputs* | A regular work plan exists and many activities are implemented | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | A regular work plan exists and all activities are implemented | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **9. Resource inventory** | There is little or no information available on the critical habitats, species and cultural values of the protected area | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Natura 2000 is carrying out some research activities |  |
| Do you have enough information to manage the area? | Information on the critical habitats, species, ecological processes and cultural values of the protected area is not sufficient to support planning and decision making | 1 | **1** | **1** |  |  | **1** | **1** | **1** |  |  |
| *Input* | Information on the critical habitats, species, ecological processes and cultural values of the protected area is sufficient for most key areas of planning and decision making | 2 |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Information on the critical habitats, species, ecological processes and cultural values of the protected area is sufficient to support all areas of planning and decision making | 3 |  |  |  | **3** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **10. Protection systems** | Protection systems (patrols, permits etc) do not exist or are not effective in controlling access/resource use | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  | **0** |  |  |  |  |
| Are systems in place to control access/resource use in the protected area? | Protection systems are only partially effective in controlling access/resource use | 1 |  |  |  |  |  | **1** | **1** |  |  |
| *Process/Outcome* | Protection systems are moderately effective in controlling access/resource use | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Protection systems are largely or wholly effective in controlling access/ resource use | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **11. Research** | There is no survey or research work taking place in the protected area | 0 | **0** | **0** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Is there a programme of management-orientated survey and research work? | There is a small amount of survey and research work but it is not directed towards the needs of protected area management | 1 |  |  | **1** |  | **1** | **1** | **1** | This is just relative to resources and not to access |  |
| *Process* | There is considerable survey and research work but it is not directed towards the needs of protected area management | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | There is a comprehensive, integrated programme of survey and research work, which is relevant to management needs | 3 |  |  |  | **3** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **12. Resource management** | Active resource management is not being undertaken | 0 |  |  |  |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Is active resource management being undertaken? | Very few of the requirements for active management of critical habitats, species, ecological processes and cultural values are being implemented | 1 | **1** | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Process* | Many of the requirements for active management of critical habitats, species, ecological processes and, cultural values are being implemented but some key issues are not being addressed | 2 |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Requirements for active management of critical habitats, species, ecological processes and, cultural values are being substantially or fully implemented | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **13. Staff numbers** | There are no staff | 0 | **0** | **0** |  |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Are there enough people employed to manage the protected area? | Staff numbers are inadequate for critical management activities | 1 |  |  | **1** | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Inputs* | Staff numbers are below optimum level for critical management activities | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Staff numbers are adequate for the management needs of the protected area | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **14. Staff training** | Staff lack the skills needed for protected area management | 0 |  |  | **0** |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Are staff adequately trained to fulfil management objectives? | Staff training and skills are low relative to the needs of the protected area | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Inputs/Process* | Staff training and skills are adequate, but could be further improved to fully achieve the objectives of management | 2 | **2** | **2** |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Staff training and skills are aligned with the management needs of the protected area | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **15. Current budget** | There is no budget for management of the protected area | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Is the current budget sufficient? | The available budget is inadequate for basic management needs and presents a serious constraint to the capacity to manage | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Inputs* | The available budget is acceptable but could be further improved to fully achieve effective management | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | The available budget is sufficient and meets the full management needs of the protected area | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **16. Security of budget** | There is no secure budget for the protected area and management is wholly reliant on outside or highly variable funding | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Is the budget secure? | There is very little secure budget and the protected area could not function adequately without outside funding | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Inputs* | There is a reasonably secure core budget for regular operation of the protected area but many innovations and initiatives are reliant on outside funding | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | There is a secure budget for the protected area and its management needs | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **17. Management of budget** | Budget management is very poor and significantly undermines effectiveness (e.g. late release of budget in financial year) | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Is the budget managed to meet critical management needs? | Budget management is poor and constrains effectiveness | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Process* | Budget management is adequate but could be improved | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Budget management is excellent and meets management needs | 3 |  |  |  | **3** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **18. Equipment** | There are little or no equipment and facilities for management needs | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Is equipment sufficient for management needs? | There are some equipment and facilities but these are inadequate for most management needs | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Input* | There are equipment and facilities, but still some gaps that constrain management | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | There are adequate equipment and facilities | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **19. Maintenance of equipment** | There is little or no maintenance of equipment and facilities | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Is equipment adequately maintained? | There is some *ad hoc* maintenance of equipment and facilities | 1 |  |  |  | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Process* | There is basic maintenance of equipment and facilities | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Equipment and facilities are well maintained | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **20. Education and awareness** | There is no education and awareness programme | 0 |  |  |  |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Is there a planned education programme linked to the objectives and needs? | There is a limited and *ad hoc* education and awareness programme | 1 | **1** | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Process* | There is an education and awareness programme but it only partly meets needs and could be improved | 2 |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | There is an appropriate and fully implemented education and awareness programme | 3 |  |  |  | **3** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **21. Planning for land and water use** | Adjacent land and water use planning does not take into account the needs of the protected area and activities/policies are detrimental to the survival of the area | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Does land and water use planning recognise the protected area and aid the achievement of objectives? | Adjacent land and water use planning does not takes into account the long term needs of the protected area, but activities are not detrimental the area | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Planning* | Adjacent land and water use planning partially takes into account the long term needs of the protected area | 2 |  |  |  | **2** | **2** | **2** | **2** |  |  |
|  | Adjacent land and water use planning fully takes into account the long term needs of the protected area | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Additional points: Land and water planning**  21a: Land and water planning for habitat conservation | Planning and management in the catchment or landscape containing the protected area incorporates provision for adequate environmental conditions (e.g. volume, quality and timing of water flow, air pollution levels etc) to sustain relevant habitats. | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Additional points: Land and water planning**  21b: Land and water planning for connectivity | Management of corridors linking the protected area provides for wildlife passage to key habitats outside the protected area (e.g. to allow migratory fish to travel between freshwater spawning sites and the sea, or to allow animal migration). | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Additional points: Land and water planning**  21c: Land and water planning for ecosystem services & species conservation | "Planning adresses ecosystem-specific needs and/or the needs ofparticular species of concern at an ecosystem scale (e.g. volume, quality and timing of freshwater flow to sustain particular species, fire management to maintain savannah habitats etc.)" | 1 |  |  |  | **1** | **1** | **1** | **1** |  |  |
| **22. State and commercial neighbours** | There is no contact between managers and neighbouring official or corporate land and water users | 0 |  |  | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Is there co-operation with adjacent land and water users? | There is contact between managers and neighbouring official or corporate land and water users but little or no cooperation | 1 | **1** | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Process* | There is contact between managers and neighbouring official or corporate land and water users, but only some co-operation | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | There is regular contact between managers and neighbouring official or corporate land and water users, and substantial co-operation on management | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **23. Indigenous people** | Indigenous and traditional peoples have no input into decisions relating to the management of the protected area | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | There are neither indigenous nor traditional people in the areas |  |
| Do indigenous and traditional peoples resident or regularly using the protected area have input to management decisions? | Indigenous and traditional peoples have some input into discussions relating to management but no direct role in management | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Process* | Indigenous and traditional peoples directly contribute to some relevant decisions relating to management but their involvement could be improved | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Indigenous and traditional peoples directly participate in all relevant decisions relating to management, e.g. co-management | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **24. Local communities** | Local communities have no input into decisions relating to the management of the protected area | 0 | **0** | **0** |  |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Do local communities resident or near the protected area have input to management decisions? | Local communities have some input into discussions relating to management but no direct role in management | 1 |  |  | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Process* | Local communities directly contribute to some relevant decisions relating to management but their involvement could be improved | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Local communities directly participate in all relevant decisions relating to management, e.g. co-management | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Additional points** *Local communities/indigenous people: Impact on communities* | 24a. There is open communication and trust between local and/or indigenous people, stakeholders and protected area managers | 1 |  |  |  | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 24b. Programmes to enhance community welfare, while conserving protected area resources, are being implemented | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 24c. Local and/or indigenous people actively support the protected area | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **25. Economic benefit** | The protected area does not deliver any economic benefits to local communities | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Is the protected area providing economic benefits to local communities, e.g. income, employment, payment for environmental services? | Potential economic benefits are recognised and plans to realise these are being developed | 1 | **1** | **1** |  |  | **1** | **1** | **1** |  |  |
| *Outcomes* | There is some flow of economic benefits to local communities | 2 |  |  | **2** | **2** |  |  |  | Some economic benefits go towards national institutions and research and none to local populations. |  |
|  | There is a major flow of economic benefits to local communities from activities associated with the protected area | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **26. Monitoring and evaluation** | There is no monitoring and evaluation in the protected area | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Are management activities monitored against performance? | There is some *ad hoc* monitoring and evaluation, but no overall strategy and/or no regular collection of results | 1 |  |  |  |  | **1** | **1** | **1** |  |  |
| *Planning/Process* | There is an agreed and implemented monitoring and evaluation system but results do not feed back into management | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | A good monitoring and evaluation system exists, is well implemented and used in adaptive management | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **27. Visitor facilities** | There are no visitor facilities and services despite an identified need | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Are visitor facilities adequate? | Visitor facilities and services are inappropriate for current levels of visitation | 1 |  |  |  | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Outputs* | Visitor facilities and services are adequate for current levels of visitation but could be improved | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Visitor facilities and services are excellent for current levels of visitation | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **28. Commercial tourism operators** | There is little or no contact between managers and tourism operators using the protected area | 0 |  |  | **0** |  | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| Do commercial tour operators contribute to protected area management? | There is contact between managers and tourism operators but this is largely confined to administrative or regulatory matters | 1 | **1** | **1** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Process* | There is limited co-operation between managers and tourism operators to enhance visitor experiences and maintain protected area values | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | There is good co-operation between managers and tourism operators to enhance visitor experiences, and maintain protected area values | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **29. Fees** | Although fees are theoretically applied, they are not collected | 0 | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** |  |  |
| If fees (i.e. entry fees or fines) are applied, do they help protected area management? | Fees are collected, but make no contribution to the protected area or its environs | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Inputs/Process* | Fees are collected, and make some contribution to the protected area and its environs | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Fees are collected and make a substantial contribution to the protected area and its environs | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **30. Condition of values** | Many important biodiversity, ecological or cultural values are being severely degraded | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| What is the condition of the important values of the protected area as compared to when it was first designated? | Some biodiversity, ecological or cultural values are being severely degraded | 1 | **1** | **1** | **1** |  | **1** |  |  |  |  |
| *Outcomes* | Some biodiversity, ecological and cultural values are being partially degraded but the most important values have not been significantly impacted | 2 |  |  |  | **2** |  | **2** | **2** |  |  |
|  | Biodiversity, ecological and cultural values are predominantly intact | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Additional Points:** | 30a. The assessment of the condition of values is based on research and/or monitoring | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Condition of values* | 30b. Specific management programmes are being implemented to address threats to biodiversity, ecological and cultural values | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 30c. Activities to maintain key biodiversity, ecological and cultural values are a routine part of park management | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **TOTAL SCORE** | **TOTAL POSSIBLE SCORE =>** | **102** | **15** | **15** | **18** | **61** | **13** | **15** | **15** | **<= PAs' SCORES** |  |

### Section Three: UNDP’s Financial Sustainability Scorecard for National Systems of Protected Areas

#### Financial Scorecard - Part I – Overall Financial Status of the Protected Areas System

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Basic Protected Area System Information** | | | |
| **Describe the PA system and what it includes**:  Cape Verde’s PA estate consists of terrestrial and coastal/marine areas spread among all of the islands and islets that compose the country’s archipelago. Both terrestrial and marine biomes are rich in biodiversity. The current network of PAs/MPAs covers today a total area of 72,156 ha of both land and seascapes. The large majority of these areas are paper parks that have been gazetted by law in 2003. | | | |
| **Protected Areas System** | **Number of sites** | **Total hectares** | **Comments** |
| National protected areas | 47 | 72,156 ha | Includes exclusively terrestrial areas (PAs) and coastal/marine areas (MPAs) |
| National protected areas co-managed by NGOs | - |  |  |
| State/municipal protected areas | - |  |  |
| Others (define) | - |  |  |

| **Financial Analysis of the Protected Area System** | Baseline year[[52]](#footnote-53)  (US$)[[53]](#footnote-54) | Year X[[54]](#footnote-55)  (US$)[[55]](#footnote-56) | Year X+5[[56]](#footnote-57)  (forecasting)  (US$)[[57]](#footnote-58) |  |  |  | **Comments** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Available Finances | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2012 |  |
| (1) Total annual central government budget allocated to SEPA management (excluding donor funds and revenues generated (4) and retained within the PA system) |  |  |  |  |  |  | There is lack of informations about budget allocated to all Pas because many of them are not operational. |
| - national protected areas | 1,712,527 | 1,712,527 | 875,000 | 875,000 | 875,000 | 875,000 | These financial data concerned the PAs of Serra Malagueta, Monte Gordo and Fogo |
| - national areas co-managed by NGOs | 0 | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |
| - state/municipal protected areas | 0 | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |
| - others | 0 | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| (2) Total annual government budget provided for PA management (including donor funds, loans, debt-for nature swaps) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| - national protected areas | 3,285,677 | 3,285,677 | 4,532,400 | 4,634,000 | 4,323,750 | 4,041,850 |  |
| - national areas co-managed by NGOs | 0 | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |
| - state/municipal protected areas | 0 | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |
| - others | 0 | 0 |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| (3) Total annual revenue generation from PAs, broken down by source |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| a. Tourism - total | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| - Tourism taxes | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| - Entrance fees | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| - Additional user fees | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| - Concessions | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| b. Payments for ecosystem services (PES) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| c. Other (specify each type of revenue generation mechanism) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| (4) Total annual revenues by PA type[[58]](#footnote-59) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| - national protected areas | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| - national areas co-managed by NGOs | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| - state/municipal protected areas | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| - others | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| (5) Percentage of PA generated revenues retained in the PA system for re-investment[[59]](#footnote-60) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| (6) Total finances available to the PA system  [government budget plus donor support etc (2)] plus [total annual revenues (4) multiplied by percentage of PA generated revenues retained in the PA system for re-investment (5)] | 3,285,677 | 3,285,677 | 4,532,400 | 4,634,000 | 4,323,750 | 4,041,850 | The data from 2007 to 2008 concerned the 3 Pas. But, from 2009 to 1012, data concerned the 8 PAs |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Costs and Financing Needs** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| (7) Total annual expenditure for PAs (operating and investment costs)[[60]](#footnote-61) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| - national protected areas | 3,285,677 | 3,285,677 | 4,532,400 | 4,634,000 | 4,323,750 | 4,041,850 |  |
| - national protected areas co-managed by NGOs | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| - state/municipal protected areas | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| - others | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| (8) Estimation of financing needs | 3,285,677 | 3,285,677 | 4,532,400 | 4,634,000 | 4,323,750 | 4,041,850 |  |
| A. Estimated financing needs for *basic* management costs and investments to be covered |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| B. Estimated financing needs for *optimal* management costs and investments to be covered | Na | Na | na | Na | na |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| (9) Annual financing gap (financial needs – available finances)[[61]](#footnote-62) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| A. Net actual annual surplus/deficit[[62]](#footnote-63) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| B. Annual financing gap for basic expenditure scenarios | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| C. Annual financing gap for optimal expenditure scenarios | Na | Na | na | Na | na |  |  |

#### Financial Scorecard – Part II – Assessing Elements of the Financing System

| **Components and Elements** | **Scores** | | | | **Comments** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Component 1 – Legal, regulatory and institutional frameworks** |  |  |  |  |  |
|
| *Element 1 –* Legal, policy and regulatory support for revenue generation by Pas | **None** | **Some** | **A few** | **Fully** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) Laws are in place that facilitate PA revenue mechanisms |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| (ii) Fiscal instruments such as taxes on tourism and water or tax breaks exist to promote PA financing | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| *Element 2 -* Legal, policy and regulatory support for revenue retention and sharing within the PA system | **No** | **Under development** | **Yes, but needs improvement** | **Yes, satisfactory** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) Laws, policies and procedures are in place for PA revenues to be retained by the PA system | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) Laws, policies and procedures are in place for PA revenues to be retained, in part, at the PA site level | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iii) Laws, policies and procedures are in place for revenue sharing at the PA site level with local stakeholders | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| *[[63]](#footnote-64)Element 3 - Legal and regulatory conditions for establishing Funds (trust funds, sinking funds or revolving funds)* | **No** | **Established** | **Established with limited capital** | **Established with adequate capital** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) A Fund have been established and capitalized to finance the PA system | 0 |  |  |  |  |
|
| (ii) Funds have been created to finance specific PAs | 0 |  |  |  |  |
|
| (iii) Funds are integrated into the national PA financing systems | 0 |  |  |  |  |
|
| *Element 4 -* Legal, policy and regulatory support for alternative institutional arrangements for PA management to reduce cost burden to government | **None** | **Under development** | **Yes, but needs improvement** | **Yes, Satisfactory** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) There are laws which allow and regulate delegation of PA management and associated financial management for concessions | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) There are laws which allow and regulate delegation of PA management and associated financial management for co-management | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) There are laws which allow and regulate delegation of PA management and associated financial management to local government | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iv) There are laws which allow private reserves | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| *Element 5 -* National PA financing strategies | **Not begun** | **In progress** | **Completed** | **Under implementation** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **5** |
| (i) Degree of formulation, adoption and implementation of a national financing strategy | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) The inclusion within the national PA financing strategy of key policies: | **No** | **Yes** |  |  |  |
| **1** | **2** |
| - Revenue generation and fee levels across PAs |  | 2 |  |  |  |
| - Criteria for allocation of PA budgets to PA sites (business plans, performance etc) |  | 2 |  |  |  |
| - Safeguards to ensure that revenue generation does not adversely affect conservation objectives of Pas |  | 2 |  |  |  |
| - Requirements for PA management plans to include financial sections or associated business plans |  | 2 |  |  |  |
| *Element 6 -* Economic valuation of protected area systems (ecosystem services, tourism based employment etc) | **None** | **Partial** | **Satisfactory** | **Full** |  |
|  | **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) Economic data on the contribution of protected areas to local and national development | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) PA economic values are recognized across government |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| *Element 7 -* Improved government budgeting for PA systems | **No** | **Yes** |  |  |  |
| **0** | **2** |
| (i) Policy of the Treasury towards budgeting for the PA system provides for increased medium to long term financial resources in accordance with demonstrated needs of the system. |  | 2 |  |  |  |
| (ii) Policy promotes budgeting for PAs based on financial need as determined by PA management plans. |  | 2 |  |  |  |
| (iii) There are policies that PA budgets should include funds for the livelihoods of communities living in and around the PA as part of threat reduction strategies |  | 2 |  |  | The PAs of Serra Malagueta and Monte Gordo are good examples of the approach. |
| *Element 8 -* Clearly defined institutional responsibilities for PA management and financing | **None** | **Partial** | **Improving** | **Full** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) Mandates of institutions regarding PA finances are clear and agreed |  | 1 |  |  |  |
|
| *Element 9 -* Well-defined staffing requirements, profiles and incentives at site and system level | **None** | **Partial** | **Almost there** | **Full** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) There are sufficient number of positions for economists and financial planners and analysts in the PA authorities to properly manage the finances of the PA system | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) Terms of Reference (TORs) for PA staff include responsibilities for revenue generation, financial management and cost-effectiveness |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| (iii) Laws and regulations motivate PA managers to promote site level financial sustainability | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (eg a portion of site generated revenues are allowed to be maintained for on-site re-investment and that such finances are additional to government budgets and not substitution) |
| (iv) Performance assessment of PA site managers includes assessment of sound financial planning, revenue generation and cost-effective management |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| (v) PA managers have the possibility to budget and plan for the long-term (eg over 5 years) |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| Total Score for Component 1 |  |  |  | **Cape Verde score: 22 / 79 = 29%** |  |
| **Component 2 – Business planning and tools for cost-effective management** |  |  |  |  |  |
|
| *Element 1 –* PA site-level business planning | **Not begun** | **Early stages** | **Near complete** | **Completed** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) PA management plans showing objectives, needs and costs are prepared across the PA system |  | 1 |  |  | Only PAs of Serra Malagueta, Monte Gordo and Fogo have a sort of management plans. All the other PAs/MPAs are not operational. |
| (ii) Business plans, based on standard formats and linked to PA management plans and conservation objectives, are developed for pilot sites |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| (iii) Business plans are implemented at the pilot sites |  | 1 |  |  | The business plan of Fogo is in perspective. |
| (degree of implementation measured by achievement of objectives) |
| (iv) Business plans are developed for all appropriate PA sites | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (business plans will not be useful for PAs with no potential to generate revenues) |
| (v) Financing gaps identified by business plans for PAs contribute to system level planning and budgeting |  | 1 |  |  | Only with the business plan of Fogo PA. |
| (vi) Costs of implementing business plans are monitored and contributes to cost-effective guidance and financial performance reporting |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| *Element 2 -* Operational, transparent and useful accounting and auditing systems | **None** | **Partial** | **Near complete** | **Fully completed** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) Policy and regulations require comprehensive, coordinated cost accounting systems to be in place (for both input and activity based accounting) | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) There is a transparent and coordinated cost and investment accounting system operational for the PA system | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iii) Revenue tracking systems for each PA in place and operational | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iv) There is a system so that the accounting data contributes to national reporting | 0 |  |  |  | Very effective system in operation |
| *Element 3 -* Systems for monitoring and reporting on financial management performance | **None** | **Partial** | **Near completed** | **Complete and operational** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) All PA revenues and expenditures are fully and accurately reported by government and are made transparent | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) Financial returns on investments from capital improvements measured and reported, where possible (eg track increase in visitor revenues before and after establishment of a visitor centre) | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iii) A monitoring and reporting system in place to show how and why funds are allocated across PA sites and the central PA authority | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iv) Financial performance of PAs is evaluated and reported (linked to cost-effectiveness) | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| *Element 4 -* Methods for allocating funds across individual PA sites | **No** | **Yes** |  |  |  |
| **0** | 2 |
| (i) National PA budget is appropriately allocated to sites based on criteria agreed in national financing strategy | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) Policy and criteria for allocating funds to co-managed PAs complement site based fundraising efforts | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| *Element 5 -* Training and support networks to enable PA managers to operate more cost-effectively | **Absent** | **Partially done** | **Almost done** | **Fully** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) Guidance on cost-effective management developed and being used by PA managers | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) Operational and investment cost comparisons between PA sites complete, available and being used to track PA manager performance | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iii) Monitoring and learning systems of cost-effectiveness are in place and feed into management policy and planning | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iv) PA site managers are trained in financial management and cost-effective management | 0 |  |  |  | . |
| [[64]](#footnote-65)(v) PA site managers share costs of common practices with each other and with PA headquarters | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| **Total Score for Component 2** |  |  |  | **Cape Verde score: 5 / 61 = 8%** |  |
| **Component 3 – Tools for revenue generation** |  |  |  |  |  |
| *Element 1 -* Number and variety of revenue sources used across the PA system | **None** | **Partially** | **A fair amount** | **Optimal** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) An up-to-date analysis of all revenue options for the country complete and available including feasibility studies; | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) There is a diverse set of sources and mechanisms generating funds for the PA system | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iii) PAs are operating revenue mechanisms that generate positive net revenues (greater than annual operating costs and over long-term payback initial investment cost) | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| *Element 2 -* Setting and establishment of user fees across the PA system | **No** | **Partially** | **Satisfactory** | **Fully** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) A system wide strategy and implementation plan for user fees is complete and adopted by government |  | 1 |  |  | Just entrance fees in some Pas exist. |
| (ii) The national tourism industry and Ministry are supportive and are partners in the PA user fee system and programs |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| [[65]](#footnote-66)(iii) Tourism related infrastructure investment is proposed and is made for PA sites across the network based on revenue potential, return on investment and level of entrance fees [3] | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iv) Where tourism is promoted PA managers can demonstrate maximum revenue whilst still meeting PA conservation objectives | 0 |  |  |  | Now, tourism and PA objectives are not linked. |
| (v) Non tourism user fees are applied and generate additional revenue |  | 1 |  |  | Municipalities applied user fees about economical activities derived in some Pas. |
| *Element 3 -* Effective fee collection systems | **None** | **Partially** | **Completed** | **Operational** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) A system wide strategy and implementation plan for fee collection is complete and adopted by PA authorities (including co-managers) |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| *Element 4 -* Marketing and communication strategies for revenue generation mechanisms | **None** | **Partially** | **Satisfactory** | **Fully** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) Communication campaigns and marketing for the public about the tourism fees, new conservation taxes etc are widespread and high profile |  | 1 |  |  | Not clear whether performed directly. |
| *[[66]](#footnote-67)Element 5 - Operational PES schemes for PAs[4]* | **None** | **Partially** | **Progressing** | **Fully** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) A system wide strategy and implementation plan for PES is complete and adopted by government | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) Pilot PES schemes at select sites developed | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iii) Operational performance of pilots is evaluated and reported | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iv) Scale up of PES across the PA system is underway | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| *Element 6 -* Operational concessions within PAs | **None** | **Partially** | **Progressing** | **Fully** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) A system wide strategy and implementation plan complete and adopted by government for concessions | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (ii) Concession opportunities are identified at appropriate PA sites across the PA system | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| (iii) Concession opportunities are operational at pilot sites |  | 1 |  |  | Some eco – touristic activities can be considered as concession opportunities |
| (iv) Operational performance of pilots is evaluated, reported and acted upon | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| *Element 7 -* PA training programs on revenue generation mechanisms | **None** | **Limited** | **Satisfactory** | **Extensive** |  |
| **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** |
| (i) Training courses run by the government and other competent organizations for PA managers on revenue mechanisms and financial administration | 0 |  |  |  | No training courses for PA managers |
| **Total Score for Component 3** |  |  |  | **Cape Verde score: 5 / 57 = 7%** |  |

Date: July 2009 (with calculation corrections introduced in April 2010)

#### Financial Scorecard – Part III – Scoring and Measuring Progress

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Total Score for PA System** | 33 |
| **Total Possible Score** | 197 |
| **Actual score as a percentage of the total possible score** | 17% |
| **Percentage scored in previous year** | n/a |

Date: July 2009 (with calculation corrections introduced in April 2010)

## Annex 7. Detailed Stakeholder Analysis

| **Stakeholder** | **Brief Summary** | **Expectations** | **Relevance to PRODOC** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Central Government Level** | | | |
| DGA - General Directorate for the Environment | 1. Responsible for terrestrial and marine PA studies and development;  2. Responsible for marine turtles and the CBD focal point;  3. PANA project responsible;  4. Environmental quality and exotic species control team | 1. The government has great expectations for the PAs GEF project;  2. PAs management plan and framework developed at the national level;  3. More flexible financial strategy developed for PAs management; | 1. Support for the creation of a specialized agency for PAs management;  2. Technical support for natural resource and conservation management issues in the selected PAs; |
| DGASP- Department of Agriculture, Livestock and Fisheries | 1. Responsible for implementing the forestry national policy;  2. Human resource availability has limited this policy’s implementation;  3. Currently developing an updated inventory of the national forest(?);  4. Encountering significant problems with forest surveillance in the rehabilitated areas;  5. Forest recovery activities consist of approx. 200 trees/hectare planted *per annum;* | 1. PAs management plans for the rehabilitation of degraded areas in a participatory manner;  2. Passing from 20% (~85.000 hectares) of territory land covered by forest to 25%(~100.000 hectares) in PAs and degraded ecosystems;  3. Establishment of small research plans / areas in terrestrial PAs. | 1. Coherence between key research institutions for PAs management and activities implementation;  2. Capacity building for natural resource management at the local level;  3. Support for the *Floris atlantica* rehabilitation project on Boavista, Sal and Maio islands. |
| DGCI- international cooperation | 1. DGCI role is mobilizing international and national funds;  2. Coordinating international cooperation; | 1.Coherence in funds mobilization to agree with ministers council approvals and Local Development Plans (PND). | 1. Support for rehabilitation of the National Environmental fund; |
| DGDT - General Directorate for Tourism Development | 1.No national strategic plan for tourism is available;  2. Current efforts aim towards developing such a plan and the resulting institutional framework;  3. No national plan for ecotourism activities development is available either. | 1. Expect to be strategic partners in this project;  2. A legal regulation framework for ecotourism as an output of this project; | 1. A focal point for PAs was designated;  2. Technical support for the regulation of tourism activities in PAs. |
| CVI- Cape Verde Investment Society (parastatal) | 1. CVI has been primarily considered as a land real estate rather than as a tourism planning strategy institution;  2. CVI leads field and institutional assessments for tourism development on each island;  3. CVI is responsible for identifying tourism markets and investment priorities for each island. | 1. An integrated national plan for tourism development in Cape Verde;  2. Boavista and Maio tourism plans revised to introduce more sustainable approaches and options. | 1. An eco-tourism industry in Cape Verde is yet to be developed;  2. Few existing eco-tourism experiences need institutional and technical strengthening (Sao Antão, Fogo, S. Antão and Boavista). |
| **Development Partners and larger NGOs** | | | |
| Austrian Development Agency | 1. Support for the environmental sector through the national budget to implement the PANA (4 millions € for 2009-20011);  2. Support from the national budget goes into good governance, environment and capacity building (treasure, DGA and tourism);  3. They evaluate environment indicators to asses progress. | 1. The main challenge is to design effective environment indicators to control government progress (i.e. criteria to assess good environmental governance, satisfactory implementation of PANA, and good PA management)  2. Recommends UNEP involvement in the project evaluation;  3. PANA will be updated in Sep. 2009, which will be a good opportunity to design and unify (present project, DGA, Austrian coop.) environment indicators for its follow-up and evaluation;  4. The potential of Trust-funds for PA funding could effectively contribute to strategic planning, natural resource and conservation management. | 1. A Trust-fund approach for PAs long term sustainability could be an effective solution;  2. Interested to be involved in setting up this potential Trust-fund;  3. Environmental indicators monitoring at National leve |
| Spanish Development Cooperation | 1. National environment sector strengthening through National budget support with two monitoring criteria, good governance and environment policies implementation;  2. Support in collaboration with the Canary Government to marine biodiversity studies and monitoring in Sal and Boavista. | 1. Better coordination, communication and information sharing between international partners for environment support activities;  2. Clear government commitment for PA management;  3. Technical and Financial support to DGA for PA management. | 1. Direct actions aiming at the sustainability of already existing and planned PAs (SM and MG);  2. Law enforcement and surveillance system through a good governance approach (Police and Port Authorities)  3. National Assembly approval of selected PA boundaries (indicator of results);  4. Support for Municipalities and local communities in PA management and capacity building. |
| European Union | 1. Approx. 85% of the EU Aid budget is deposited into the national treasury to support environment programs, among other things;  2. Support environment policies through PRCM;  3. Finance Murdeira and St. Luzia MPAs; the Watershed management Project (Fogo, Brava, Santo Antão) for drip-irrigations; and forestry recovery;  4. From Headquarters and through PNUD, the EU supports water and energy policy development each year;  5. The fisheries sector is financed by supporting artisanal fisheries sustainable management and Fisheries surveillance (DGP). | 1. From the EU cooperation perspective, there is potential to support PA management through a Trust fund, either through the UN or the national budget fund (in the area of institutional support);  2. Framework and responsibility defined at the National level regarding PA management. | 1. Potential support for municipalities and NGOs through the EU Fund for capacity strengthening in natural resource management (800,000 €);  2. Potential support through a project budgeted at 30 millions € for infrastructure support in the areas of sport, environment and good governance (Fund INTERREG-EU). |
| French Development Agency | 1. The main objective is to support institutional decentralization;  2. Development programme supported by the National Budget support (Governance, Education and Culture, Community and Civil society)  3. No direct support in environmental issues;  4. Support in clean energies (2000,000 €); | 1. Private sector compensation for the environmental impacts (Monte Adriano, Orlando Cunha, Estefanina etc.);  2. Co-financing at the technical and financial level is possible, but needs to be negotiated with headquarters | 1. Supports the GEF energy project in FOGO;  2. This project can support local community associations for project proposal development and presentation to the French Dev. Agency; |
| Peace Corps, US | 1. Supported the first phase of PAs by providing environmental educators;  2. Actively engage in supporting PA network systems by providing specialized personnel; | 1. Clean energy in all PA buildings and surrounding communities;  2. Legal approval of MPAs within 18 months of project inception. | 1. Technically support this project by providing 4 Peace Corps personnel (Environmental Educators and Engineers);  2. Share information and lessons learnt in other PAs; |
| WWF Cape Verde | 1. Biodiversity conservation and MPA establishment;  2. Two sites: MPA of Murdeira and MPA of S. Luzia;  3. Challenges are: (i) financial and technical sustainability and (ii) strategic planning for PA management. | 1. Sal island MPA establishment;  2. Concerned that the proposed PAAA will become too much of a high-level and bureaucratic institution;  3. Protocol signatures and MOU to have clear responsibility for PA management. | 1. Challenges in law enforcement, surveillance and prosecution for environmental offences;  2. Marine Environment Awareness project for Children in cooperation with DM education;  3. The new vision for eco-tourism in Boa Vista project; |
| Regional Coastal and Marine Conservation Programme for West Africa (PRCM) | 1. PRCM is a regional program aiming to develop capacities (regional and local) for marine biodiversity conservation and natural resource management in coastal environments;  2. PRCM thematic components are: Conservation, Fisheries and ICZM. | 1. PRCM is interested in contributing technically to PAs GEF project;  2. Strengthening the ongoing efforts of MPAs for coral conservation;  3. Effective and operational establishment of the autonomous PAAA to ensure the sustainability of PA management. | 1. All those involved at PRCM NGOs (UICN, FIBA, WWF, WETLAND international) are potential partners of the current project’s activities;  2. The BIOMAC project promotes information exchange and capacity building in regards to biodiversity conservation;  3. Supporting stakeholder involvement and capacity building. |
| Amigos da Natureza (AAN), affiliated to the international NGO Friends of the Earth | 1. National NGO based on volunteering and working on reforestation, animal husbandry, agriculture, school construction, and professional training;  2. Establish and maintain small Monte Verde nursery;  3. Experience in fruit tree introduction and production; | 1. Establish partnerships for the Monte Verde PA management; 2. Awareness raising with land-owners and farmers for PA activities;  3. Financial sustainability for PA management (i.e. not exclusively based on volunteering) | 1. Inexistent law enforcement for environmental offenses;  2. Garbage and animal husbandry activities are biodiversity threats in Monte Verde;  3. Land property issues need to be discussed in a participatory approach;  4. PA is an important source of medicinal plants for locals; |
| **Private Sector Tour Operators on Sal and Boavista Islands** | | | |
| MANTA DIVING, Sal Island | 1. Private enterprise with strong knowledge of Sal marine and coastal environment and associated threats;  2. Concerns regarding the effective MPA management in Sal. | 1. To support the project through knowledge sharing; | 1. Coral reefs in P. Sinó are threatened by pelagic fishing with nets;  2. In the area of C. Fragata there is illegal shark fishing (2 miles off the coast}  3. 2 miles off the coast of P. Sinó there is a submarine landscape worth conserving;  4. Artificial coral reef project, with funding from IPIMAR and The Lisbon Oceanarium and in partnership with the University of Algarve; |
| UNOTUR /FROMITUR - UNOTUR National Association of Tour Operators, Sal Island | 1. Currently transformed into the newly created *Chamber for trade and tourism confederation*;  2. Represents hotels, restaurants, travel agencies and businessmen associations;  3. Represents Cape Verde in international tourism fairs;  4.Organizes a yearly international tourism conference; | 1. Expects the Government and Municipalities to assist in improving local tourism conditions and infrastructures in Sal and in the overall environment; | 1. Resolution of existing land conflicts among tourism operators (UNOTUR), CMSal and the Government;  2. Coastal management in partnership with the CMSal;  3. International promotion of environmental tourism in Sal and Boavista; |
| Naturalia, Boavista Island | 1. Natural Tourism enterprise, providing snorkelling, and bird, turtle and whale watching activities in the proposed MPA to tourists and tourism operators; | 1. Actively involved in the project as natural and eco-tourism specialists in Boavista;  2. Establishment of a control and surveillance system in the proposed MPA; | 1. Approx. 1500 tourist/ week enter Boavista by charter flights. ;  2. Sharing awareness raising, eco-tourism experience and lessons learned in Boavista. |
| Espingueira Hotel, Boavista Island | 1. Private tourism investor with a small eco-hotel on the north-east coast. | 1. Interested in becoming involved in the project as private investors in eco-tourism | 1. Sharing eco-tourism experience and lessons learned in Boavista. |
| **Local Government Level -- São Vicente Island** | | | |
| CMSV | 1. To be effective and efficient in PA management, the CMSV requires serious commitment by the central government to institutional and financial support;  2. Need to establish a local fund to directly manage PA activities and maintenance;  3. CMSV can support awareness raising campaigns; | 1. Leading role for awareness raising, and natural tourism activities;  2. Integration of the island tourism plan in PA management;  3. Further development of the S. Luzia MPA;  4. Participatory approach to PA establishment; | 1. Access to M. Verde is blocked during rainy seasons (2 weeks) due to strong land erosion;  2. Land ownership in M. Verde needs to be changed, as the majority of PA land is private;  3. CMSV potential activities: (i) education centre with endemics and medicinal plans, (ii) establishing a farmer managed botanical garden and medicinal plant site; (iii) construction of three thematic “View Points” (Mindelo, Santa Luzia, Praia Grande/B. das Gatas); |
| DMADRRM | 1. Responsible for PA management;  2. Recently hired a PA specialist to begin the PA management plan;  3. Funds allocation for PA activities are presented to DGA for approval; | 1. PA management as a shared responsibility between DMADRRM, Farmers, Women associations and CMSV;  2. Technical capacity available, but lacking delegation and in need of all types of equipment and materials necessary for the implementation of PA management activities; | 1. PA management, control and enforcement of the conservation  2. The Land property issue needs in depth consultations, communication, information and awareness raising among land owners and farmers in the PA |
| National Institute for Fishery Development - INDP | 1. Fisheries management research institute;  2. Other thematic areas: marine biodiversity conservation and natural resource management research;  3. Experience in developing co-management projects in MPAs, and community-based coastal management. | 1. Active partners in all project phases;  2. Involve Port Authorities for MPA law enforcement. | 1. Different ongoing projects: (i) marine turtle conservation, (ii) community based marine turtle project (PRCM/IUCN); (iii) Santa Luzia MPA management (WWF, DGA partnership);  2. Advisors in environmental monitoring, database management, community mobilization and engagement and information exchange, |
| **Local Government Level – Santo Antão Island** | | | |
| Porto Novo Municipal Council (CMPN) | 1. Responsible for water distribution, sewages (basic sanitation), coastal territory planning, and fire fighting;  2. Moroços PA belongs to the R. Grande and P. Novo municipalities, but in the buffer zone there are 3 communities under P.Novo jurisdiction, each of them with about 86 families: Lombo de Figueira, Lagoa and Pico da Cruz. | 1. A conservation approach integrating effective PA management with the forest of Planalto do Leste;  2. Tourism service development due to PA establishment;  3. Rangers in the forest should be better equipped and trained in order to effectively carry out their duties. | 1. A forestry specialist has been hired by the DMADRRM in Santo Antão;  2. Institutional support for PA establishment and management plan development;  3. Renewable energy project (solar, wind and hydraulic) for PAs; |
| Municipal Environment Unit in Porto Novo | 1. Priority issues are water supply, sewage treatment and sanitation, which contribute to MDG achievement;  2. Other politics in PAM include actions against soil erosion, promotion of sustainable agriculture production, fisheries and BD,  3. Promoting PAs and watershed planning; | 1. Active partners for PA management;  2. Participatory activities supporting community communication, information sharing , and training for PA management. | 1. Main challenge/ limitation is funds limitation;  2. The Plan Alto do Leste have already had important projects aiming at rural development, rural extension, and forest management. This experience should be used as a basis for this project;  3. Community engagement and experience for environmental issues. |
| DMADRRM | 1. Responsible for forest management;  2. Not a specialist on PA or biodiversity conservation;  3. Overwhelmed by the responsibilities and duties of working in 3 municipalities, due to limited human resources. | 1. Technical staff available in order to answer specialized PA management needs;  2. Review and improvement of the forest rangers system. | 1. Collaborating with an EU project for watershed management;  2. Institutional support for PA establishment and management;  3. Experience working with local community associations on environmental issues. |
| **Local Government Level – Boavista Island** | | | |
| Municipal Council of Boa Vista (CMBV) | 1. 4 communities are located within the PA: Povoação Velha, João Galhego, Tarafes and Fundo de Figueiras, comprising around 1000 people;  2. Approx. 100 fishermen live in the Sal Rei village and fish along the coastal zone, in the 3 miles reserved exclusively for artisanal fishing;  3. Fishermen from Santiago concentrate their activities in Boavista;  4. No taxes for tourism activities are in place;  5. The CMBV has good relations and communication with all tourism operators on the island;  6. The national environment fund does not contribute to the CMBV | 1. Directly involved in the project;  2. Integration of local communities into the MPA management plan;  3. Capacity building training for eco-tourism and conservation management;  4. Involvement of all local partners (DMADRRM, IMP, Natura 2000, Turtle foundation, and tourism operators). | 1. ZDTI (Touristic development areas) are expanding towards the proposed MPAs;  2. Include alternative economic activities (agriculture, animal husbandry, goats, livestock, cheese production) to engage communities in the MPAs;  3. Institutional support to enforce environmental laws and prosecution; |
| DMADRRM | 1. Limited human resources are available to lead participative and integrated PA establishment processes;  2. Majority of MPA land (i.e. coast) belongs to the State; | 1. Integrated approach (i.e. different stakeholders) for MPA management;  2. Control and law enforcement in the MPAs for environmental offences; | 1. Engaging communities in the MPA management process by organizing/ creating community associations;  2. Institutional support as direct DGA representative. |
| Tourism Development Agency for Boavista and Maio SDTIBV | 1. Officially delegated by the Central State, they should have jurisdiction over Governmental land;  2. Lead territory planning and project development in the ZDTI;  3. An “Integrated Tourism Development Plan” for Boavista and Maio has been recently concluded, but is still awaiting official approval by the Central Government; | 1. Strategic partners in the project;  2. The major challenge is to form community organizations that will be engaged in PA management;  3. Potential financial support for professional training for local young people in the areas of tourism guide, alternative agriculture, local organizational community and fishermen development | 1. Road will be extended from the East (into the proposed MPA);  2. The port will be expanded, and a new one built to the North of Sal Rei;  3. Land is not sold to private investors, but conceded for a 90 years period. |
| **Local Government Level -- Sal Island** | | | |
| Municipal Council of Sal (CMSAL) | 1. Critical position regarding MPAs management in Sal, as tourism development and real-estate pressure on coastal environment is outside the scope of CMSALs responsibility (decisions made at the Praia level). | 1. Key stakeholder in MPA management;  2. Expect eco-tourism initiatives in Sal island through the establishment of new MPAs. | 1. Resolution of decision making procedure between CMSal and Government;  2. Ecotourism in S. Negra project, including an eco-school and a virtual library; |
| Representation of DGA for Sal and Boa Vista | 1. Mainly deals with the environmental impact assessment of tourism projects, submitted for approval to the central government, in Sal and Boa;  2. Official government responsible for environmental themes in Sal and Boavista. | 1. The area of Murinho de Açúcar to be protected; | 1. Review of tourism projects approved for the southwest coastal zone, from P. Sinó to the islet of Rabo de Junco, to clearly establish environmental impacts;  2. In the area between and around C. Fragata and S. Negra, some preliminary tourism projects have been proposed inside the official MPAs;  3. Support to the reduction of the environmental impact of stone extraction in Buracona/Ragona and Murilho Filho; |
| **Local Government Level -- Fogo Island** | | | |
| Municipal Council of Santa Catarina, on Fogo Island | 1. CMS Catarina includes most of the PA surface 2. In the PA, three local communities are present: Chã das Caldeiras (1000 people), Estância Roque and Bongaieira. | 1. Capacity building for natural resource and PA management;  2. Rehabilitation (quality, data management) of the Chã das Caldeiras areas; | 1. Institutional support for PA management;  2. Support for PA awareness raising campaign. |
| Municipal Council of Mosteiros, on Fogo Island | 1. Part of the PA under CM Mosteiros jurisdiction;  2. No local community from the municipality exists in the PA;  3. CM Mosteiros started a pilot “participatory budget” experience to better manage limited funds for development activities. | 1. Strategic partner for the PA management;  2. Community awareness raising campaigns for the PA;  3. Community involvement in tourism activities in the PA. | 1. Integrate communities into conservation practices, particularly schools;  2. No participation by communities in forest management;  3. Young people involved in PA tourist activities;  4. Honey production had no success (DMADRRM);  5. Assisting farmers with irrigation, animal husbandry, pest management, coffee white fly; |
| **NGOs – Sal Island** | | | |
| SOS TARTARUGA | 1. An environmental protection NGO involved in marine turtles conservation (MTC);  2. Main objective is stopping people from eating turtles - *C. Caretta*;  3. Interventions: ecotourism, hatchery, surveillance with support from INDP and WWF, and involving fishing communities. | 1. Involving local fishing communities in marine turtle conservation. | 1. Ecotourism packages include night walks (8 people), star gates and walks around the turtle area;  2. Environmental education and recreation initiatives for kids;  3. Involving the construction industry is a major challenge, as is beach surveillance. |
| Fishing community of Palmeira | 1. 1. Critical position regarding MPA management in Sal, as tourism development and real-estate pressure on the coastal environment is out of their control. | 1. Legal establishment and respect of MPA rules. | 1. Involvement of young fishermen in MPA monitoring and eco-tourism activities through SOS-Tartaruga. |
| **NGOs - Boavista Island** | | | |
| NATURA 2000 | 1. National NGO supported by EU and Spanish funds;  2. Marine turtle conservation and ecology research;  3. Main objective is protecting beaches in order to conserve turtles;  4. Involved in awareness raising events with the local Sal Rei population and schools. | 1. MPA to be legally established as an instrument for biodiversity conservation;  2. Active community involvement in the project (at the present lack of interest); | 1. Sharing awareness raising experience and lessons learned in Boavista. |
| TURTLE FUNDATION | 1. International NGO working in marine turtle conservation in the Northern and Southern (Lacacão) beaches. | 1. Interested in becoming involved in the project for capacity –building activities with local communities. | 1. Tourism operators have asked the foundation to establish marine turtle eco-tourism; |
| The Youth Centre of Boavista | 1. Promote professional training and volunteering among the youth population; | 1. Technical support and training for conservation monitoring, and engaging environmental school education. | 1. Sharing capacity-building experience and lessons learned in Boavista. |
| **NGOs -- Fogo Island** | | | |
| COSPE - Local NGO focused on development | 1. International NGO supporting local farmer associations with 100 members producing wine;  2. Support in improving wine production, rural tourism development and tourism reception structures; | 1. To clearly define the vineyard producing land and territorial planning for economic activities in the PA;  2. To create new jobs around the PA; | 1. Involve and engage communities in PA planning;  2. Support natural products markets (agricultural, craft);  3. Experience with basic tourism reception. |
| Cape Verde Women’s Organization (OMCV) | 1. Women’s association working towards empowering women rights and skills development. | 1. Young professional woman training in PA management to avoid prostitution;  2. Tourism control in the park,  3. Family nucleus education and assistance in PA;  4. Micro-credit scheme established. | 1. Project for sustainable tourism in Fogo;  2. Community based organization and engagement;  3. Experience in awareness raising of negative tourism impacts (prostitution, paedophilia, drug abuse). |
| **Community Organizations -- Santo Antão Island** | | | |
| Community association of Lajedos | 1. A women’s group that buys local prime material (grouge, medicinal plants) and sells it to other communities;  2. Provides jobs to local members during the jam production;  3. Organizes a monthly information-sharing event with other communities to discuss lessons learned and updates. | 1. Active partners in PA management and tourism activities. | 1. This Project has provided jobs to community members, in a poor production area that has no employment options;  2. Sharing their experiences of PA management activities .in regards to community involvement; |
| Land owners and *grogue* producers | 1. 30 families are the owners of the land in Cova, and produce *grouge*. | 1. Eco-tourism initiatives;  2. Environmental control of *grogue* production. | 1. A project to support the ecologically sustainable production of *grouge*, as well as quality control.  2. Eco-tourism engagement and support. |
| Farmers from Cova | 1. They do not own the land, and are not interested in getting organized;  2. They live in communities around the PA; | 1. No clear/ direct interest in the project at this stage. | 1. The PA produces plenty of fruits, figs, vineyards, and vegetables;  2. Value of PA services needs to be disseminated. |
| ATMAR (local NGO) | 1. Working in S. Vicente, S.Nicolau and S. Antão;  2. Targeted groups are fishermen and farmers;  3. Major focus is on mobilizing and empowering people / communities;  4. Experience in local products marketing and trade, design and craft-making, with experience in eco-labelling; | 1. Active partners in the project management; not a service provider. | 1. Coordinate an NGOs Network, gathering 24 associations working in three islands, known as RASOL  2. Current projects with youth, intergraded local development, and professional training;  3. Involved in the Watershed territory planning in Santo Antão PA. |

## Annex 8. Overview of PPG Studies

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1 | Sillitoe, Andrew (2009):  *PPG-Project phase GEF-4176 Consolidation of Cape Verde’s Protected Areas System: Ecotourism & Livelihoods*  43 pages | The study analysed the potential for ecotourism development at target PAs and the immediately adjacent areas. It prepared recommendations for Full Project activities to develop and implement ecotourism at selected sites. An analysis of potential for alternative livelihoods at the 8 PAs and surrounding areas has been carried out, including production and marketing strategies for fisheries (MPAs), aquaculture, food products, lodging, guides and craft sales and. Additionally, a review of Carrying Capacity was undertaken in accordance with the project PPG document. |
| 2 | Vera-Cruz, Maria Teresa (2009):  *Subsídios para a elaboração do projecto da “Consolidação do Sistema Nacional de Áreas Protegidas em Cabo Verde”*  43 pages | The study analysed information on the state of biodiversity in project target terrestrial areas, using existing information sources. This information was compiled and presented in descriptive form. Information on PAs coverage of globally significant biodiversity was also gathered and presented. A set of ecological indicators for inclusion in the Full Project were proposed, but the lack of more detailed data to quantify those was pointed out as a problem. Recommendations for Full Project activities were provided. |
| 3 | Corrine do Rosário Timas Almeida Msc. (2009):  *Consolidação do Sistema Nacional de Áreas Protegidas de Cabo Verde: Áreas Marinhas Protegidas*  Universidade de Cabo Verde  22 pages | The study analysed information on the state of biodiversity in project target coastal and marine areas, using existing information sources. This information was compiled and presented in descriptive form. Information on PAs coverage of globally significant biodiversity was also gathered and presented. A set of ecological indicators for inclusion in the Full Project were proposed, but the lack of more detailed data to quantify those was pointed out as a problem. Recommendations for Full Project activities were provided. |
| 4 | Borges, Luísa & Furtado, Solange (2009):  *Consolidação do Sistema Nacional de Áreas Protegidas de Cabo Verde: Relatório da Componente relativa a “Políticas, Assuntos Jurídicos e Institucionais”*  27 pages | The study focused on collecting and analyse information on existing policies, legal and regulatory framework for PA management in Cape Verde. It identified deficiencies in this framework. Capacity gaps were also analysed using the UNDPs Civil Society Organization Capacity Assessment Tool. Considerations about the needs for PA management and expansion, including consultations regarding the creation and feasibility (political, institutional and financial) of a new PA Autonomous Authority (PAAA), were also taken into account. Recommendations on institutional capacity building for effective PA management were made. |
| 5 | Veiga, José Augusto Lopes da (2009):  *Consolidação do sistema de áreas protegidas em Cabo Verde: Estudo socio-económico*  44 pages | The study focused on baseline information on social and economic development context in and around target PAs for the project, including land tenure and resource use issues. The study is rich in data and the focus was mostly on the local livelihoods, including resource ownership and management issues. Recommendations for development during Full Project were provided. |
| 6 | Djigo,Seybatou Alpha (2009):  *Analyse du programme financier du système national d’aires protégées au Cap Vert, et de sa gestion au niveau institutionnel et individuel*  81 pages | The study includes an extensive analysis of financial program and management systems and capacities at the level of the PA institution and individual PAs/MPAs. It included an initial analysis of existing and potential PA financing, and of current and potential PA funding in Cape Verde, of the costs for effective PA management, and of the gap between funds available and funds needed. Analysis of potential funding strategies and mechanisms for PAs in Cape Verde was equally carried out and the Financial Sustainability Scorecard was applied. |
| 7 | Merino, Sonia (2009) : *Stakeholder consultation and engagement - SPWA - Consolidation of Cape Verde’s Protected Areas System / PPG- Project phase GEF UNDP PIMS Project ID: 4176*  84 pages | The study includes a stakeholder analysis for PA management (at the national and regional levels); to identify capacity barriers and capacity building needs; identify opportunities for public-private partnerships; assist in the mobilization of co-financing and develop stakeholder participation and engagement plans for the FSP. The key conclusions are: (1) general levels of awareness are high, but participation and leadership still incipient; (2) at institutional level, there are considerable limitations with respecr to specialized capacities for PA management; (3) at the community level, there is strong interest in MPAs; and (4) law enforcement is weak inside and around PAs. |

## Annex 9. Calculation Basis for the Incremental Cost Analysis

| **Project / programme / Initiative** | **Start** | **End** | **Implem.** | **Financier** | **Amount in $** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **I) MADDRM's Programme – Baseline = $23.4 million** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Gestão equilibrada dos recursos naturais** |  |  |  |  |  |
| Criação e gestão participativa das áreas protegidas- 2ª FASE |  |  | MADRRM |  | $418,630 |
| Programa Energia, Ambiente e Prevenção e Resposta a Desastres Naturais | 2006 | 2010 | MADRRM | NU | $14,120,710 |
| Gestão dos recursos naturais de Cabo Verde |  |  | MADRRM | MADRRM | $418,630 |
| Fundo Nacional do Ambiente |  |  | MADRRM |  | $59,804 |
| Reforço institucional DGA e DGPOG |  |  | MADRRM |  | $299,022 |
| Seguimento e avaliação do PANA |  |  | MADRRM |  | $143,530 |
| Criação de um sistema de seguimento da qualidade ambiental |  |  | MADRRM |  | $275,100 |
| **Desenvolvimento da investigação** |  |  |  |  |  |
| Criação de um Sistema Permanente de Estatísticas Agrícolas | 2008 | 2011 | MADRRM |  | $113,628 |
| Sistema Estatístico das Pescas | 2008 | 2011 | MADRRM |  | $114,824 |
| **Redução dos riscos de catástrofes naturais e provocados** |  |  |  |  |  |
| Estudo geofisico de Cabo Verde |  |  | MADRRM |  | $62,447 |
| Centro nacional de previsão e modelação climatica |  |  | MADRRM | USAID | $48,741 |
| Rede nacional de observação metereologica e climatica |  |  | MADRRM | MADRRM | $86,896 |
| **Ordenamento de Bacias Hidrográficas e desenvolvimento integrado** |  |  |  |  |  |
| Ordenamento e valorização Bacia Hidrográfica Alto Mira e Rª Torre | 2005 | 2009 | MADRRM | MADRRM | $598,043 |
| Ordenamento e valorização Bacia Hidrográfica Rª Prata | 2005 | 2009 | MADRRM | MADRRM | $191,374 |
| Projecto Integrado de Desenvolvimento das Bacias Hidrográficas de Santiago - PIDIBHIS | 2002 | 2009 | MADRRM | Austria | $1,759,355 |
| Protecção dos recursos naturais na ilha do Fogo | 2008 | 2009 | MADRRM | KfW | $1,956,316 |
| **Valorização dos recursos naturais e desenvolvimento agrosilvopastoril** |  |  |  |  |  |
| Diversificação de culturas | 2008 | 2011 | MADRRM |  | $1,196,086 |
| Campanha agricola fitossanitaria e gestão pesticidas |  |  | MADRRM |  | $299,022 |
| **Valorização dos recursos económicos e financeiros** |  |  |  |  |  |
| Rede observatorio de seguimento ecologico |  |  | MADRRM |  | $27,450 |
| Apoio a implementação e operacionalização do sistema de seguimento e avaliação |  |  | MADRRM |  | $59,804 |
| **Valorização dos produtos da pesca** |  |  |  |  |  |
| Fiscalização da ZEE de Cabo Verde | 2008 | 2011 | MADRRM |  | $47,843 |
| Formação operadores e tecnicos do sector das pescas | 2009 | 2009 | MADRRM |  | $48,741 |
| Criação de um observatório de investigação oceanográfica e atmosférica-TENATSO | 2007 | 2009 | MADRRM | MADRRM | $77,746 |
| Implementação do Plano de Gestão de Pescas |  |  | MADRRM |  | $59,804 |
| Reforço das capacidades de inspecção aos produtos da pesca |  |  | MADRRM |  | $83,726 |
| Sistema Integrado de Apoio ao Investimento |  |  | MADRRM |  | $478,435 |
| Melhoria da qualidade e valorização das Pescas |  |  | MADRRM |  | $112,372 |
| Desenvolvimento pesca artesanal |  |  | MADRRM |  | $239,217 |
| **II) International Partners Baseline - $ 120.0 million** |  |  |  |  |  |
| UN System | 2008 | 2011 | UN and Gov. | UN System | $70,000,000 |
| EU, France and others (rough estimate) | 2009 | 2014 | various | Various | $50,000,000 |
| **III) MADDRM's Programme Co-financing - $ 6.6 million** |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Management of Cape Verde's PA Programme (cash)** |  |  | MADRRM | MADRRM | $783,000 |
| Investigação e conservação da biodiversidade marinha |  |  | MADRRM | MADRRM | $384,615 |
| Conservação da biodiversidade terrestre |  |  | MADRRM | MADRRM | $323,618 |
| Monitorização dos recursos naturais |  |  | MADRRM | MADRRM | $192,308 |
| Ordenamento e manutenção de perimetros florestais | 2008 | 2011 | MADRRM | MADRRM | $2,307,692 |
| Criação de novas áreas florestais | 2008 | 2011 | MADRRM | MADRRM | $512,821 |
| Valorização de zonas semi aridas (sistemas agro-florestais) |  |  | MADRRM | MADRRM | $256,410 |
| Projecto integrado de desenvolvimento agro-silvopastoricia | 2008 | 2011 | MADRRM | MADRRM | $1,538,462 |
| Realização do Inventário Nacional Florestal | 2008 | 2011 | MADRRM | MADRRM | $320,513 |
| **IV) International Partners Co-financing - $ 9.7 million** |  |  |  |  |  |
| Austria's contribution to Government Budget Support for Environment | 2009 | 2010 |  | Austria | $5,560,000 |
| Austria's contribution to Support to Municipal Environment Plan | 2009 | 2011 |  | Austria | $1,636,517 |
| Austria's contribution to Water Management Support -Santiago | 2009 | 2011 |  | Austria | $278,000 |
| Spain: Maio-Support to Coastal Communities NRM and Artisanal Fisheries and Marine RM | 2009 | 2010 |  | Spain | $1,646,295 |
| WWF | 2010 | 2014 |  | WWF | $375,000 |
| Peace Corps (USA) | 2009 | 2010 |  | USA government | $336,000 |
| UNDP and Joint UN Programme | 2008 | 2013 |  | UNDP TRAC + UN DAO | $300,000 |

[Paste signature page when final]

1. UNDP, Human Development Report (2007/8). Cape Verde ranks third in terms of Human Development after Seychelles and Mauritius. [↑](#footnote-ref-2)
2. [↑](#footnote-ref-3)
3. Roberts CM, et al. Marine biodiversity hotspots and conservation priorities for tropical reefs. Science 2002; 295:1280-1284. http://www.starfish.ch/reef/hotspots.html#9 [↑](#footnote-ref-4)
4. IBA registered under number [078](http://www.birdlife.org/datazone/ebas/index.html?action=EbaHTMDetails.asp&sid=79&m=0). [↑](#footnote-ref-5)
5. The last eruption was on 1955. [↑](#footnote-ref-6)
6. The PAs count on management plans, infrastructures, personnel, surveillance systems and some level of ecological monitoring [↑](#footnote-ref-7)
7. Cf.: UNDP/GEF *Integrated participatory ecosystem management in and around protected areas; Phase I”* This project will close at the of 2009. [↑](#footnote-ref-8)
8. This is consistent with the importance that these islands have in supporting coastal and marine life [↑](#footnote-ref-9)
9. Its future is however uncertain due to an on-going case of controversial land ownership and building rights. [↑](#footnote-ref-10)
10. Differently from other sectors and sub-sectors under MADRRM’s responsibility, PA management is mostly centralised in Praia. The functions of a typical ‘environment delegate’ on the islands is therefore mostly of reporting and transmitting information and dossiers, while the actual management of PAs is done out of the capital. [↑](#footnote-ref-11)
11. One of the PPG study indicated that there are 76 rangers (*guarda florestal*) on Santo Antão Island (covering 8.796 ha of forested area) and 90 on Fogo Island (covering 11.242 ha). 13% of them are above 60 years of age. None of them have received formal training in PA surveillance, although they routinely report on in environmental infractions in PAs. On São Vicente Island surveillance has been conceded to a local NGO Amigos da Natureza (affiliated with the international NGO Friends of the Earth). [↑](#footnote-ref-12)
12. To a large extent, the development of Cape Verde’s PA System is also derived from priority-setting orientations contained in the National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP), although it is widely recognised among experts that the NBSAP should be updated and that the process should be used as an opportunity for mainstreaming biodiversity into relevant sectoral policies. [↑](#footnote-ref-13)
13. The legal framework for the environment sector in Cape Verde is broad rather and thorough. It covers topics such as air quality, water resources, sea pollution, biodiversity, environmental information and education, solid waste management and protected areas and environmental impact assessment (EIA). [↑](#footnote-ref-14)
14. It also provides general guidance on the purpose and permitted uses for each of the categories mentioned. [↑](#footnote-ref-15)
15. There are few alternative sources of construction sand in Cape Verde, apart from the less cost-effective option of importation. [↑](#footnote-ref-16)
16. Local spirit made from any readily available starch-containing plant. [↑](#footnote-ref-17)
17. FAO estimated that in 2001, captures were well below estimates of potential sustainable harvests, for example, 10-15% for tuna, 50-70% for pelagics, 20-30% of demersals, 75-95% of red lobsters, and 0% of green lobsters. (West Africa Trade Hub, in www.imcsnet.org) [↑](#footnote-ref-18)
18. Only few coral bleaching events were reported in Cape Verde. The PPG study on Marine Biodiversity has pointed out to the fact the archipelago’s coral communities have a low mortality rate. They are likely more resilient than other comparable communities in the Atlantic, a fact that has woken scientific interest. [↑](#footnote-ref-19)
19. ‘Consolidation’ is hereby understood as the act of pooling together fragmented initiatives, information and knowledge for dealing with a ‘system’, and no longer with a collection of sites. Also, the concept of a ‘PA System’ is to be distinguished from a ‘PA Network’ (more commonly adopted in Cape Verde), as the system refers not just to the sites (and a network of them), but also to the institutions, partnerships, knowledge base and capacities that are involved in the management of PAs. [↑](#footnote-ref-20)
20. Since then, several tourism development projects worth hundreds of millions of dollars have kick-started and moved on very aggressively. [↑](#footnote-ref-21)
21. From PPG study on Ecotourism (2009): “*At the present time, the recommendations of EIAs are routinely overridden in favour of individual investors schemes which are clearly environmentally damaging.*” [↑](#footnote-ref-22)
22. Refer to for the full results of the Scorecard. [↑](#footnote-ref-23)
23. The PPG process showed the there is political will to implement an autonomous authority for PA management, as foreseen in Decree-Law 3/2003 [↑](#footnote-ref-24)
24. These areas are: (1) Capacity to conceptualize and develop sectoral and cross-sectoral policy and regulatory frameworks; (2) Capacity to formulate, operationalise and implement sectoral and cross-sectoral programmes and projects; (3) Capacity to mobilize and manage partnerships, including with the civil society and the private sector; (4) Technical skills related specifically to the requirements of the SPs and associated Conventions; and (5) Capacity to monitor, evaluate and report at the sector and project levels. (see for a reference) [↑](#footnote-ref-25)
25. Calculated on the basis of the original 47-site PA/MPA estate, which has 72,156 ha, of which 58,696 ha are exclusively terrestrial and 13,460 ha coastal and marine. [↑](#footnote-ref-26)
26. With the exception of the inhabited Islet of Santa Luzia with 3,500 ha, which counts on a management plan but very few management interventions. [↑](#footnote-ref-27)
27. As noted in paragraph 1, GDP takes into account quantifiable activities in commerce, transport, public service and tourism. Thus the environment is undervalued. For a discussion on the disparity between national income accounts and the environment, see: Eric Zencey. G.D.P.R.I.P. Op-Ed Contributor. NYT, August 10, 2009 [↑](#footnote-ref-28)
28. Santa Luzia is the only MPA that counts on a management plan and access restrictions enforced by the Coast Guard. The island is uninhabited na is in its entirety with 3,500 hectares. [↑](#footnote-ref-29)
29. Mostly small sites (~260 ha in average) and under category Natural Monument, which require limited management interventions. [↑](#footnote-ref-30)
30. The sites are: on *(i)* Boa Vista Island: Integrated Natural Reserve (RNI) Ilhéu de Baluarte, RNI Ilhéu dos Páassaros, RNI Ilhéu do Curral Velho, Natural Reserve (RN) Ponta do Sol, RN Boa Esperança, RN Morro de Areia, RN Tartaruga, Natural Park (PN) do Norte, Natural Monument (MN) Ilhéu de Sal-Rei and Protected Landscape (PP) Curral Velho; and *(ii)* on Sal Island RN Marinha Baía da Murdeira; RN Costa da Fragata; RN Ponta do Sino; RN Rabo de Junco; RN Serra Negra; PP Buracona-Ragona; PP Monte Grande; PP Salinas Pedra Lume e Cagarral. [↑](#footnote-ref-31)
31. Reference is made to the final evaluation of the Phase I Project, which will be shortly submitted to the GEF Evaluation Office, as well as to the project’s PA Management Effectiveness Tracking Tools (GEF3 model), the updated version being part of the Final Evaluation Report. [↑](#footnote-ref-32)
32. Reference is again made to the final evaluation of the Phase I Project. [↑](#footnote-ref-33)
33. By adding to the 73,072 ha of the areas that will either be made operational or supported by the project to the existing areas that were operationalised by the previous GEF Protected Area project, we obtain 76,772 ha. The area will then represent the achievement in terms of PA/MPA operationalisation as a cumulative GEF investment. [↑](#footnote-ref-34)
34. PIF is the GEF’s Project Identification Form, which contains in 10 summarised pages the project concept. The PIF for this project was cleared by the GEF CEO on 15 Sep 2008, included in the GEF Council’s Work Programme of November 2008 under the umbrella programme ‘Strategic Programme for West Africa’ (SPWA), Sub-Component Biodiversity. It was thereafter approved by the GEF Council as part of that Work Progamme. Comments from Council members were received and were addressed in PRODOC. Refer to the separate file CEO Endorsement Request for an overview of how comments were addressed. [↑](#footnote-ref-35)
35. Gazetted terrestrial PAs represent 7% of the country’s land surface. [↑](#footnote-ref-36)
36. Both projects have sites on Santo Antão. In particular, the LDCF project will be dealing with adaptation issues in the watershed issues in the watershed within which the Cova, Paúl and Ribeira da Torre Natural Park is located, where nature-based adaptation options are expected to be trialled. This is an excellent base for collaboration between the two projects. [↑](#footnote-ref-37)
37. Although the focus of Island-Wide Offices will be clearly on MPA management, during the inception phase, it will be assessed whether the coverage to be provided by Offices on Sal and Boavista Islands can also be extended to the few terrestrial sites on the islands. [↑](#footnote-ref-38)
38. Within this effort, an MOU between the IWO on Sal Island and the upcoming EU funded project for the operationalisation of Baía da Murdeira (in partnership with WWF) may be developed with respect to services (e.g. office space, admin services) but also synergies, collaboration and liaison, as the IWOs will be the actual representations of the new PAAA on the islands. [↑](#footnote-ref-39)
39. The ‘Alternative livelihood programs’ of the previous PA project was rated as ‘Highly Satisfactory’ by the independent terminal evaluation, and Outcome # 5 (under which the programme was implemented) as generally ‘Satisfactory’ with the following remarks: “*Remarkable progress was achieved, with a significant contribution toward achieving the project’s development goals, but there is need for* […] *improved overall strategic planning, consolidation and monitoring of micro-credit [and grants] programmes, and of eco-tourism strategic planning, marketing and related activities.*”. [↑](#footnote-ref-40)
40. Funding ended in 2008, however. [↑](#footnote-ref-41)
41. For the two PAs that were operationalised by the previous GEF PA project, it is only now, after the completion of the GEF project and with government funding that efforts towards the establishment of PA Consultative Councils are taking place. [↑](#footnote-ref-42)
42. Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Relevant and Time-bound. [↑](#footnote-ref-43)
43. Refer to SRF Table for additional assumptions. [↑](#footnote-ref-44)
44. Includes the following eight categories: environmental; financial; operational; organizational; political; regulatory; strategic; and other. [↑](#footnote-ref-45)
45. Output 2.4 foresees that exotic species are under management and IAS are under sustained control in target terrestrial PAs. [↑](#footnote-ref-46)
46. Several case studies are available in: Stephen Bass, et al (2005): *Reducing poverty and sustaining the environment. The politics of local engagement*. The International Institute for Environment and Development. Earthscan, UK. [↑](#footnote-ref-47)
47. *Grandes Opções do Plano*. [↑](#footnote-ref-48)
48. TOR for the purpose will be prepared upon inception. [↑](#footnote-ref-49)
49. Abridged Version in English [↑](#footnote-ref-50)
50. Comments from representative of Tui / Thompsons Holidays Boa Vista, Natura 2000 Boavista & Naturalia Boa Vista [↑](#footnote-ref-51)
51. Irwin. A, Wilson. C, (2009) Cape Verde Islands, Bradt Travel Guides UK [↑](#footnote-ref-52)
52. The baseline year refers to the year the Scorecard was completed for the first time and remains fixed. Insert year eg 2007. [↑](#footnote-ref-53)
53. Average conversion rate for 2007 is 1.22 [↑](#footnote-ref-54)
54. X refers to the year the Scorecard is completed and should be inserted (eg 2008). For the first time the Scorecard is completed X will be the same as the baseline year. For subsequent years insert an additional column to present the data for each year the Scorecard is completed. [↑](#footnote-ref-55)
55. Conversion rate of 1.22 as of 9 Sept.2008 [↑](#footnote-ref-56)
56. Year X+5 refers to forecasting annual data for five years in the future from the year the Scorecard is being completed. The data should be be for one year (eg is year X is 2008 then the data should be presented for year 2013). The data would be based on long-term financial plans. If no financial planning has been done then this column can be left blank. [↑](#footnote-ref-57)
57. Insert in footnote the local currency and exchange rate to US$ and date of rate [1.22 as of 9 September 2008] [↑](#footnote-ref-58)
58. This total will be the same as for (3) but broken down by PA type instead of by revenue type [↑](#footnote-ref-59)
59. This includes funds to be shared by PAs with local stakeholders [↑](#footnote-ref-60)
60. In some countries actual expenditure differs from planned expenditure due to disbursement difficulties. In this case actual expenditure should be presented and a note on disbursement rates and planned expenditures can be made in the Comments column. [↑](#footnote-ref-61)
61. Financing needs as calculated in (8) minus available financing total in (6) [↑](#footnote-ref-62)
62. This will be more relevant to parastatals and PA agencies with autonomous budgets [↑](#footnote-ref-63)
63. [↑](#footnote-ref-64)
64. [↑](#footnote-ref-65)
65. [↑](#footnote-ref-66)
66. [↑](#footnote-ref-67)